

Enchiridion medicum: or, a new manual of physick. Being a compendium of the whole art, in three parts, viz. I. Of diseases of the head. II. Of diseases of the breast. III. Of diseases of the belly / [Robert Johnson].

Contributors

Johnson, Robert, 1640?-

Publication/Creation

London : A. Bettesworth, 1717.

Persistent URL

<https://wellcomecollection.org/works/m44yn385>

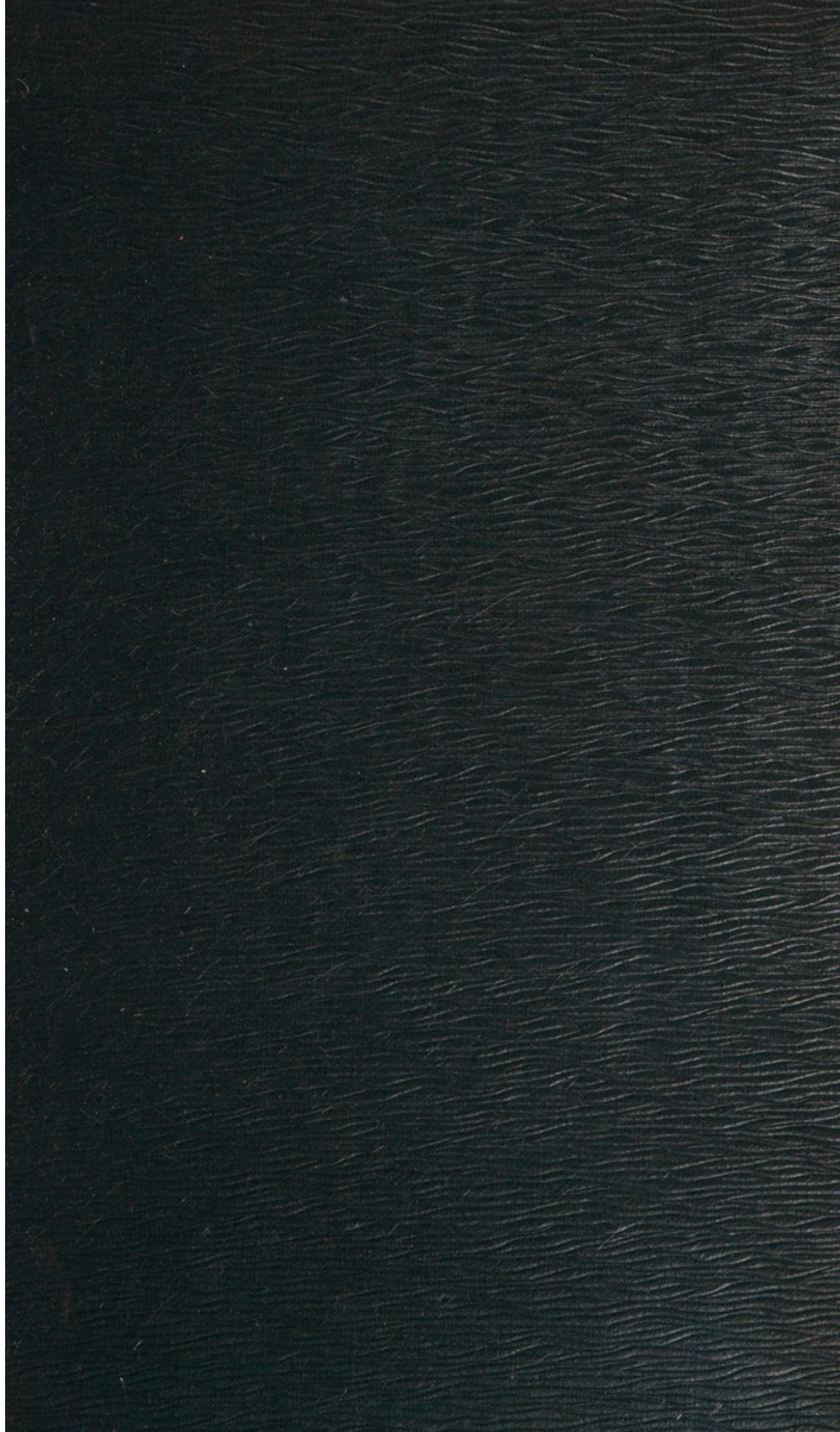
License and attribution

This work has been identified as being free of known restrictions under copyright law, including all related and neighbouring rights and is being made available under the Creative Commons, Public Domain Mark.

You can copy, modify, distribute and perform the work, even for commercial purposes, without asking permission.



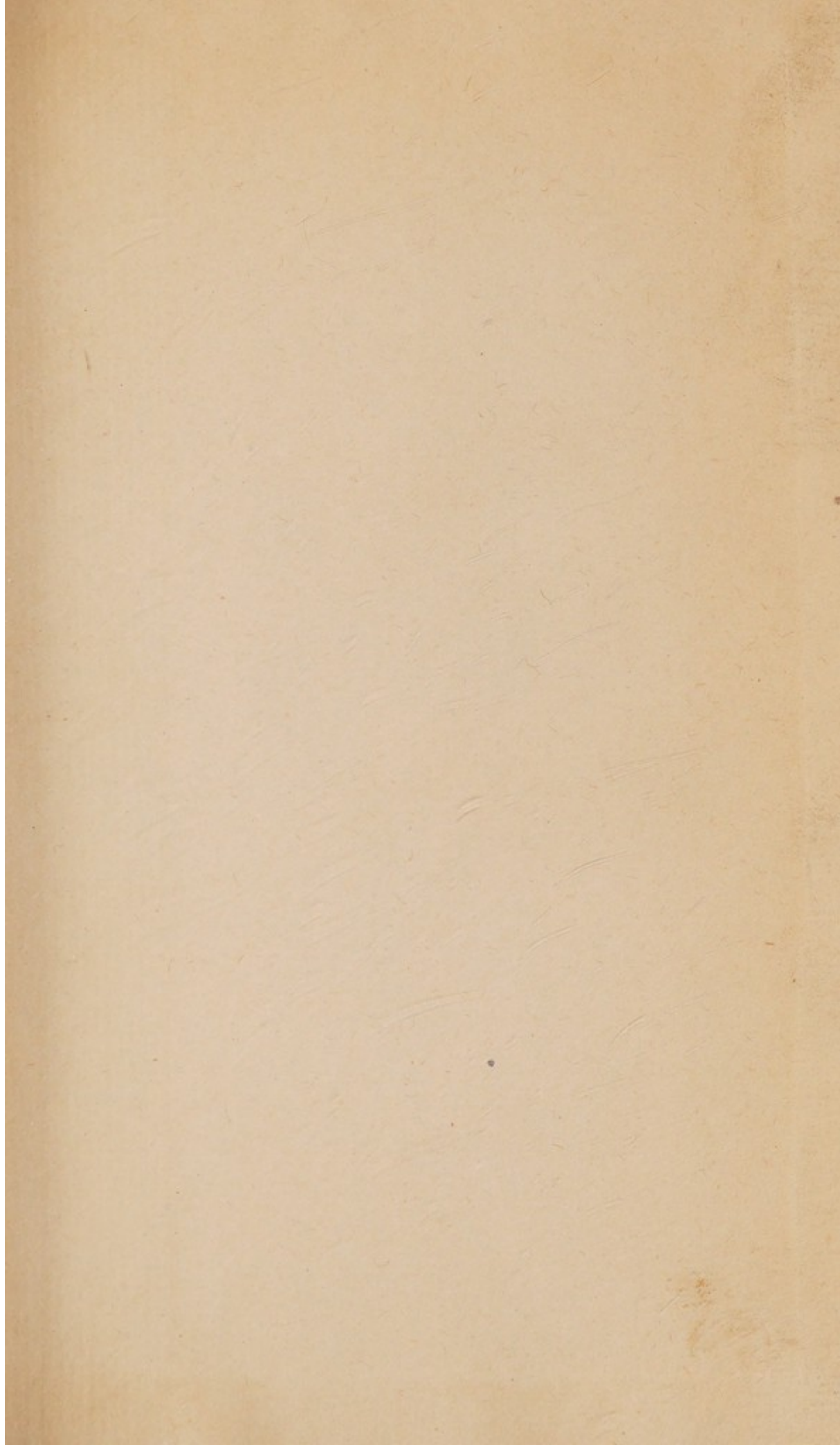
Wellcome Collection
183 Euston Road
London NW1 2BE UK
T +44 (0)20 7611 8722
E library@wellcomecollection.org
<https://wellcomecollection.org>

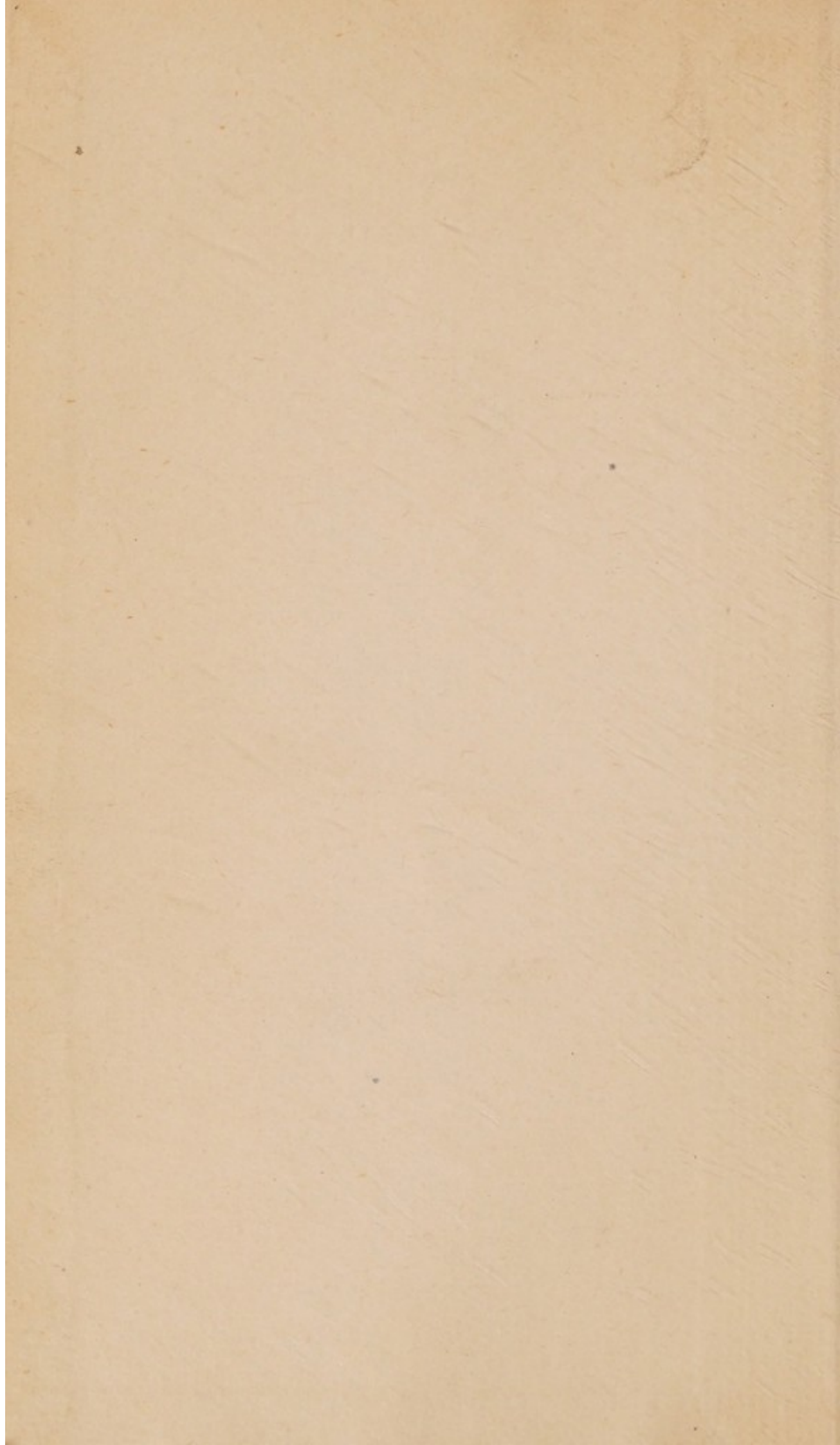


30527/A

E. xv
17/8

2/5/-





The Silhouette



Vera Effigies Roberti Johnson

ENCHIRIDION MEDICUM:
OR, A NEW
MANUAL
OF
PHYSICK.
BEING

A Compendium of the whole Art, in Three Parts,

*Viz. { I. Of Diseases of the Head.
II. Of Diseases of the Breast.
III. Of Diseases of the Belly.*

Wherein is briefly shew'd,

1. The Name. 2. The Derivation. 3. The
Causes. 4. The Signs. 5. The Prognosticks.
And 6. A rational Method of Cure.

Comprehending the Substance of the more ap-
prov'd Authors, both ancient and modern.
Publish'd for the Benefit of all Persons, being
fitted to the meanest Capacity.

The Fourth EDITION, with Additions.

By ROBERT JOHNSON, *Med. Professor.*

L O N D O N,

Printed for A. BETTESWORTH, at the Red
Lyon in Pater-Noster Row, 1717.



THE HISTORY OF THE
ROYAL SOCIETY OF LONDON
FROM ITS INSTITUTION
TO THE PRESENT TIME

By JOHN HENRY
THE HISTORY OF THE
ROYAL SOCIETY OF LONDON
FROM ITS INSTITUTION
TO THE PRESENT TIME

Comprehending the substance of the
Transactions, both original and
Published for the Benefit of all Persons
interested in the natural History

The Fourth Edition with
Additions

LONDON
Printed for A. BATHURST
in Pall-mall

TO THE
READER.

IN this little Tract, I have bestowed some Pains, in searching out, and proposing the true Causes and Cure of Diseases : Which, I hope, will induce other Ingenious-spirited Artists to a farther Enquiry, that so the Art of Physick may be the better illustrated, and many things in it that are yet obscure, may be made known.

The Chief End of Physick, is to maintain and recover Health ; wherefore I think it would be more for the Honour of all Learned Physicians, to employ themselves in the Improvement of the Materia Medica, (which have been hitherto too much neglected) than to content themselves with a formal Way of Practice : For Diseases cannot be cured by Scholastick Twattle, or Fine Words, but by good Remedies.

To the R E A D E R.

The great Platerus, Helmont, and the famous Franciscus de la Boe Sylvius, &c. did endeavour to reform the Practice of Physick, and excelled many others (their Contemporaries) in the most difficult Cures ; yet because they had recourse to Chymical Remedies, in the Cure of many Diseases, the more lazy Tribe of Physicians made it their Business to traduce them.

Truly there are too many such carping Zolius's at this Day (who envy Glory to all, except themselves) from whom I must expect the same Fate : I can do no more but pray for them ; Lord, forgive them ; for they know not what they do.

*From the lower-most Door,
on the Right-hand, in
Norfolk-street, in the
Strand.*

THE
INTRODUCTION:
Containing the
CAUSES and CURE
OF
DISEASES

In GENERAL:
AS ALSO,
Some Choice SPECIFICKS
for the Cure of DISEASES.

THE Causes of Diseases depend on
Lympha any way vitiated, be-
cause it will (in time) corrupt
the whole Mass of Blood.

*Quicquid enim, siue Bilis sit, siue Pitui-
ta, siue succus Pancreaticus, sanguisve men-
struus, Lympham reddere potens acriorem,
dolorem & morbos facile causat, parte affecta
male sese habente.*

This is the Hypothesis of most eminent Physicians, both Ancient and Modern.

Spittle being continually swallowed down, and adhering to the Gut, the more fluid part of it is dissolved by the continual Conflux of Choler, and the Juice of the Pancreas, or Sweet-bread, in the small Guts.

If Choler (which abounds with a bitter volatile Lixivial Salt) be mixt with the Juice of the Pancreas, which is naturally sourish, (as hath been sufficiently evinced by the indefatigable Industry of the most ingenious Anatomist, *Regnerus de Graaf*) they must of necessity stir up an Effervescency in their Concourse there. As long as the aforesaid Humours are well tempered, the Effervescency will be mild, and friendly to Nature, and therefore cannot be perceived in healthy People.

The Humours rising from this mild Effervescency, pierceth into the Lacteal Veins, and circulates with the Lympha to the Heart, and seems to give the natural Consistency to the Bloud.

The more viscous part of these Humors, passeth by degrees to the thick Guts; and being there mixed with the Excrements, makes them more viscous and yellow, and helps the Excretion of them.

But if there be an Obstruction of the Lacteal Ducts, or Branches of the Pancreas, or Sweet-bread, by reason of viscid Flegm, which being separated from the Blood by the Glandules of the Pancreas, is there collected by degrees; it is sent from thence (in too large a quantity) to the main Duct, or Pipe thereof, which detaineth the Juice of the Pancreas contrary to Nature, which ought continually to flow into the small Guts.

The Juice of the Pancreas being compelled to stagnate, or stand still in its passage, quickly grows acrimonious, because the volatile Spirit (which is naturally conjoin'd to it to temper it) doth gradually fly away, by which it becometh more acrid, and acquires a putrefactive Ferment, whence at length it makes way through the obstructing Flegm, and is effused into the small Gut, called *Duodenum*; where meeting with Choler (peccant, in a Lixivial Salt Acrimony) it stirs up a vitious Effervescency, or preternatural Ferment, which raiseth acrimonious Humors, and halituous or flatulent Vapours, which are carried through the Lacteal Veins, and Thoracick Passage, and so through the *Vena Cava*, ascendens to the right Ventricle of the Heart; from whence it circulates with the spirituous Blood and Lympha, vitiating,

A 4 and

and corrupting the whole Mass of it with its fermental Acrimony : Which is the Cause of most Chronical Diseases, as the famous *Franciscus de le Boe Sylvius*, hath accurately observed.

If the acrid Humours do affect the Head, it may cause most Distempers incident to it, as Head-ach, Convulsions, Epilepsie, Palsie, Apoplexy, &c.

If it invades the Lungs, it causeth Difficulty of Breathing, Inflammations, Ulcers, and Phthisis, or Consumption.

If it penetrates the Membrane *Pleura*, it causeth the Pleurisie.

If it possesseth the Joints, it causeth Arthritick Pains, or the Gout ; which hath its Name from the Part affected.

If there be a Defluxion of acrid Humors on the Reins, Bladder, or Womb, it may cause Inflammations, Ulcers, or Cancers in them.

If it be conveyed to the obscene Parts, (especially after too much impure Coition) it may cause malign Eruptions, &c.

If the Lympha becomes very acrid in the conglobated, and conglomerated Glands, and if Nature be over-burthened by its plentifulness, it may be the Cause of Catarrhs, Rheumatisms, Scrophula, &c.

If acrid Humors be luxuriant in the Blood, and Lympha, it may be the Cause

Cause of all Eruptions, as Itch, Scabs, Eri-sipela's, Leprosie, &c.

Acrimonious and flatulent Vapours, may be the Cause of all Ague-Fits, with all their Symptoms, as in the beginning, Horror, Chilness, Cold, Shaking, &c. then follows Reaching, Yawning, and Vomiting, &c.

At length these sharp halituous Vapors are carried to the right Ventricle of the Heart, and by their Acrimony alters and troubles its Vital Effervescency; and by over-stirring the Heart, causeth a more frequent Pulse, and many times produceth grievous Symptoms, as great Heat and Thirst, Difficulty of Breathing, Raving, Heart-ach, Swooning, and all other Symptoms that happen in all Intermitting Fevers.

If Choler become peccant, not only in a Lixivial salt Acrimony, but also an inflammable Oylinefs; the Humours (that are produced from its vitious Effervescency, with the too tart Pancreat Juice, and over-viscous Flegm in the small Guts) will be the more acrid and fervid; and circulating (with the spirituous Blood and Lympha) to the Heart, will cause an Effervescency in the right Ventricle of it, which will stimulate and incite it to a more forcible Motion, whence the Pulse is continually pro-

produced more frequent against Nature ; after which follows great Heat and Burning, &c. and therefore may be called a Fever ; so that this may be the Cause of all continual Fevers not putrid.

If the Stomach by Dietetick Errors, as in Eating, or Drinking too much sour Fruit, or Juices, be over-charg'd with Acids, it may prove hostile, injurious, and a morbifick Cause of that which we call the Heart-burning, &c. with sour Belchings, and sometimes a Nauseousness even to Vomiting.

In this Case, after the Operation of a gentle Emetick, you may administer half a Dram of the Pouder of Pearl Crabs-Eyes, or any of the Testaceous Pouders, (twice or thrice in a Day) to absorb the peccant Acidity ; Chalybeates may be also safely administred.

Likewise in all Chronical Diseases, caused by the over-sourness of the Juice of the Pancreas, &c. as aforesaid ; after general Evacuations, the finest Filings of Iron turn'd to Rust, may be given to half a Dram at a time, in a stued Prune, or any other Vehicle, twice in a Day ; because the Stomach by its incisive Acidity, (together with other accidental, or concomitant Acids) doth penetrate the Particles of the Iron, and rarifie its Vitriolick Salt, which will

will not only help Digestion, but kill Worms, and circulates with the Blood and Lympha, and will in time purifie the whole Mass of it.

But if Choler be peccant as aforesaid, causing Fevers, and other Acute Diseases; then after Evacuation, by Vomiting, or Purging, I commend acid Liquors, and Juices, as Lemons, &c. Also purified Niter may be given in all Fevers.

But here we may note, That it is the Nature of all Acids, to coagulate and thicken the Blood and its Serum; wherefore we must be cautious, that we do not let Blood, nor give too many Acids in the Small-Pox, and malignant Fevers, because in these Distempers, the Blood is preternaturally viscid, and therefore it abounds with too much Acidity; of which you may read more at large in the ensuing Treatise.

I come now to mention some choice Specificks for the Cure of Diseases, for the Sake and Benefit of the Poor, who have not Money to pay a Doctor for his long Receipts, nor the Apothecary for Medicines.

SAlt Niter purified, is an efficacious Medicine in the Cure of most Diseases ; it may be poudred with an equal Quantity of white Sugar, and given to half a Dram at a time every six Hours, in all Fevers, the whole time of Sickness, and also before and after ; because it is an acid Salt, and contains in it a volatile incorruptible Sulphur ; and by reason of its Acidity, it refrigerates the inflamed Blood, and powerfully checks the preternatural Fermentation of it, and preserves its natural Consistency : For (by the subtilty of its Spirit) it insinuates it self into the whole Mass of Blood, and penetrates into all Parts, and so strengthens and recreates the Heart, as to make it resist and overcome all Putrefaction ; and therefore it is a great Antidote against the Plague, and all contagious Fevers.

If it be dissolved in any liquid Vehicle, and drank a little often, it will dilute the Lixivial Salt of Choler, and being mixed with proper Catharticks, and Balsamick Medi-

Medicines, it will conduce much to the Cure of most Chronical Distempers also; for it discusseth Wind, opens all Obstructions, and causes the vitious Humours to precipitate, and to be evacuated both by Urine and Stool.

Quicksilver boil'd in Water, with a few Raisins of the Sun to sweeten it, and the Liquor drank freely, killeth Worms. The Quicksilver may be boiled a thousand times, and always have the same weight; so that the Water partakes of Mercurial Irradiation, by which it becomes destructive to Worms.

A strong Decoction of Ground-Ivy, or Alehoof, sweetned with Sugar-Candy, and a quarter of a Pint of it taken twice or thrice in a Day, helps Distempers of the Breast and Lungs; and a strong Infusion of it in *Aqua Vitæ*, or Brandy, cureth the Colick.

The Decoction of Herb-Robert, and *Patronichia*, or Whitlow-Grass, with Leaves like Rue, (given inwardly every Day, 'till the Mass of Blood, and Juices of the Body be impregnated with the Vertues of the Herbs) cureth the King's-Evil.

The Juice of Penny-royal clarified; and a little sweetned with Sugar-Candy, and given the quantity of a Spoonful, three or four times in a Day, cureth all sorts of Coughs.

Cows

Cows and Goats-milk boiled in an equal quantity of Water, (wherein unslak'd Lime hath been quenched, and a little Cinamon, and the young Bark of the Oak bruised and boiled in it, 'till a third part be consumed) cureth all kinds of Fluxes.

Glauber's Sal Mirabile, is an excellent Lenitive Cathartick: It may be safely given to Men, Women, or Children, in all Diseases where purging is necessary.

The Dose is from half a Dram to an Ounce, dissolved in warm Whey, or Milk and Water.

A few Drops of rectified Oyl of Vitriol, mixed with a quarter of a Pint of fair Water, to a light Acidity, a little sweetned with white Sugar, and drank every Day for some time, killeth Worms, and quencheth Thirst in Fevers.

If you mix an Ounce of rectified Oyl of Vitriol, with two Ounces of Oyl of Ben, or pure Oyl of Olives, stirring it 'till it be well incorporated, you have a good Balsam to ease Pain, and cure an Inflammation in any part, by anointing once in a Day or two, you may apply a Colwort-leaf, (or a Plaister of *Diachylon*, or a Poultis of White-Bread and Milk, with a little Butter in it) to the grieved part, after anointing; but you must have a care that it does not touch your Linnen.

A strong Tincture of *Catechu*, or *Japonian* Earth, (with half its weight of Jesuits Bark, both in fine Pouder) in small Cinamon-Water, cureth Catarrhs, and all sorts of Fluxes.

Take a quarter of a Spoonful thrice a Day, in any Vehicle.

Sweating is good in most Diseases, if Strength permits.

Virginia Snake-Root, and the Root of *Contra Yerva*, bruised and boiled in fair Water, and sweetned with a little Sugar; and given a quarter of a Pint every four Hours, to any that are bitten with an enraged Viper, soon cureth the Patient, especially if you bathe the part bitten with the same Decoction, (without Sugar) so hot as can be endured.

Gambogia finely poudred, and mixed with an equal quantity of pure Niter, and given to half a Dram at a time, twice or thrice in a Week, soon cureth the Yellow-Jaundice, and Dropsies.

The best *Gum Arabick*, given at least a Dram, twice or thrice in a Day, either in Pouder, or dissolved in small Ale, or any other convenient Vehicle, doth wonderfully mitigate the Sharpness of Urine.

A strong Decoction of woody Nightshade, a little sweetned with Sugar, and given to a quarter of a Pint every Morning,

ing, will purge gently, and open all Obstructions, and cure the Yellow-Jaundice, Dropsies, &c.

The Decoction of Hearts-Ease, sweetened with Sugar-Candy, cureth the Pleurisie, and other Inflammations. It is an excellent Antivenerian, &c. and therefore it may be a chief Ingredient in Decoctions to cure the French-Pox.

A Decoction of Groundsel is an universal Medicine for all Diseases coming of Heat : It purgeth gently ; and if the Stomach be nauseous, it may cause Vomiting : It is very safe, and may be given in all Distempers, where Purging is necessary.

The fresh Herb, boiled in Milk 'till it be tender, and then strained out, and the Herb bruised and boiled in the same Milk, with Crumbs of White-Bread, or fine Oatmeal, into the Consistence of a Poultis, and a little Oyl, or Hog's-fat put to it, and applied to any Inflammation, or Swelling, it will soon give Ease, and either dissolve the Tumor, or bring it to Suppuration.

Native Cinnaber, finely powdred and washed, (from its volatile malignant Salt) often in warm Water, and rectified Spirit of Wine burnt over it two or three times, doth Wonders in curing most Chronical Diseases. The Dose is from ten Grains to twenty, in any Vehicle.

Mis-

Mistleto dried, and finely poudred with double its weight of white Sugar, and a few Drops of Oyl of Amber mixed with it ; half a Dram of this Pouder given twice or thrice in a Day , cureth Convulsions, and the Epilepsie.

Crude Antimony flux'd (at least an Hour) with decrepitated Sea-Salt, in a strong Fire, and afterwards washed from the Salt in warm Water, is friendly to Nature, and cureth Fevers. The Dose is from five Grains to ten, in any Vehicle.

The Jesuit's Bark finely poudred, and given from half a Dram to two Drams, or more at a time, infused in Wine, and drank at the going off of the Fit, and afterwards every four Hours, is such a Specifick for the curing of all Intermitting Fevers, or Agues, that it seldom fails, especially if the Patient be well purged before he take it.

You must continue the use of it for at least ten Days, that the Particles of the Pouder may be continually conveyed into the Bloud, by which the Febrifick Ferment may be destroyed.

Give the Sick a little Broth of Mutton, or Chicken, with a few Crumbs of White-Bread, (or any other Food easie of Digestion) within half an Hour after the taking of each Dose, which will mix with the Chile, and the Bloud will be impregna-

ted with the Vertue of it. It also cureth all kinds of Fluxes.

Three or four Drops of the Juice of Ivy, or of Asarabacca clarified, and dropt into each Ear warm, every other Night, (and the Ear gently stopt afterwards with Cotton, or Wool) will soon cure Deafness; snuff up the Juices into each Nostril also, to purge the Head.

Two Grains of each of the aforesaid Herbs dried, and finely poudred, and snuffed up each Nostril, at Night going to Bed, twice in a Week, will purge the Head of Rheum, and cure an inveterate Head-ach, Tooth-ach, and Inflammation of the Eyes, &c.

The Syrup of the Juice of Buckthorn-Berries, or of wild Cucumbers, taken an Ounce at a time, with two Drams of pure Nitre, dissolved in Ale or Whey, twice or thrice in a Week, cureth the Dropsie.

The Pouder of Olibanum, or Mastick, or equal parts of both, mixed with old Conserves of Roses, and taken the quantity of a Nutmeg, twice or thrice in a Day, cureth a Catarrh, especially if you blow some of the Pouder into the Throat every Night going to Bed, to strengthen the Salival Glands.

Lapis Hematites, or the Bloud-stone, being applied to the bleeding part, will stop the Hemorrhage. It

It is likewise an excellent Medicine taken inwardly, being repleted with the *Primum ens Auri*; from which (being finely poudred) may be drawn a Gold-like Tincture, with a strong *Aqua Regis*, made of the rectified Spirit of Nitre, and Sal Armoniack; to which you may add four times the quantity of rectified Spirit of Wine.

Take twenty Drops of it in a Glafs of Ale or Wine, two or three times in a Day: It cureth most Chronical Diseases.

The true *Lapis Nephriticus*, cureth the Stone, being prepared and taken after the same manner.

Ens Veneris is good to cure the Rickets; three or four Grains of it may be given to a Child twice a Day, in any Vehicle.

Half a Dram of the fine Pouder of Gum of Guaiacum, mixed with an equal quantity of factitious Cinnaber in fine Pouder, given every other Morning, (in a Spoonful of Milk or Whey) for thirty or forty days, cureth the Venereal Pox, and most other Chronical Diseases.

Oyl of Walnuts, or Linseed-Oyl, (by expression) (either exhibited inwardly, or given in Clysters to four Ounces at a time) giveth Ease in the Stone and Collick, &c.

A Dram of Oyl of Amber unrectified, (mixed with an Ounce of Populion) cureth the Piles.

Purified Honey is a universal Balsam: It cureth Sore-Eyes, being spread on a fine Rag, and applied; mix it with Gargarisms for sore Mouths, and with Injections for hollow Ulcers, &c.

The gross Pouder of Mastick is excellent (to smoke in a Pipe) for a Defluxion of Rheum on the Lungs, &c.

Saccharum Saturni, (dissolved in Water) mortifies sharp Humors in the Eyes, and all other Inflammations; it is a great Anodine, cures Burnings, and Scaldings in a short time, stops bleeding, and prevents Accidents in Amputations, for it resisteth Putrefaction.

If you give half a Dram of it twice a day, in any Vehicle, it will soon quench the Flame of Lust.

Half an Ounce of burnt Alum, mixed with two Ounces of White-wine-Vinegar, cureth an Inflammation in any part, being spread on a Rag, and applied.

Sulphur of Copper, or Vitriol (called Sulphur of Venus) is an incomparable Anodine, far exceeding any Opiate.

Roman Vitriol calcin'd to redness, stoppeth all Fluxes of Blood in a moment, and cures Wounds by the first intention.

Your

You may dissolve half a Dram of it in three or four Spoonfuls of warm Water, and dip a Pledget of Lint in it, and apply it to the Wound, keeping the Lips of it close: But if the Wound be deep, it must be injected with a Syringe.

Any other Vitriol is of the same Virtue, but not so potent.

Half an Ounce of Quicksilver, mixed with an Ounce of Pomatum, (spread on a long Linnen Rag, two Inches broad, and covered with another Linnen Rag for a Girdle) worn for some time, cureth the Itch.

But you must purge once or twice in a Week, to prevent Salivation.

The small Bone in a black Snail's-head, used as an Amulet, to hang about the Neck; and Rings made of an Elk's hoof, or of the Teeth of a true Sea-Horse, and worn continually, are all of the same Virtue, and cureth the Cramp.

The Hand of a dead Man or Woman, being laid upon a Scrophulous Tumor, and there kept till the Patient do feel the Coldness of it penetrate to the innermost parts of the Swelling, it will dispel and cure it by often doing.

It likewise cureth a Dropsie of the Belly.

The Roots of *Contra yerva*, or *Counter-païson*, *Virginia Snake-root*, and *Zedoary*, all, or either of them, is good against the Plague, and all contagious Fevers, any way used.

Here followeth some Receipts of choice Medicines, which I use in my own Practice.

Pulvis Balsamicus noster, Our Balsamick Pouder.

TAke of *Sarsaparilla* grossly poudred four Ounces; let it be infused in two Quarts of rectified Spirit of Wine, for two or three Days, then press it out very hard, and add the same quantity of *Sarsaparilla* as before; do this for eight or ten times, the oftner the better; add to the Spirit, of the best Gum of *Guaiacum*, in fine Pouder half a Pound; the Balsam of *Peru* and *Tolu*, of each two Ounces, mix them all together in a Glass Retort, lute a Receiver to it, and digest it for ten days, then draw off all the Spirit with a gentle heat in *Balneo Mariæ* when it is cold, break the Retort, and take out the Pouder, and keep it for use.

It

It is an efficacious Medicine against the Rheumatism, Gout, Venereal Pox, and all Chronical Diseases.

The Dose is half a Dram in a Spoonful of Whey or Milk, or any other Vehicle, every Morning fasting ; or mix it with an equal quantity of factitious Cinnaber in fine Pouder, and give it every Morning and Evening for some time.

Electuarium Antiscorbuticum nostrum, Our Electuary against the Scurvy, &c.

Take of the Berries of Bays, Ivy and Juniper, of each four Ounces ; the Seeds of Dwarf-Elder, Burdock, Ash, Broom, Peony, Gromwel, the Bark of Elder, of each two Ounces.

Let them be all bruised, and boiled in the Juices of Elder-Berries, and wild Cucumbers, of each one Pound ; the Juice of Buckthorn-Berries, four Pound, 'till half of it be boiled away ; then press it out very hard, and boil it to the Consistence of a Pulp ; to every Pound of it, add an equal quantity of white Sugar, and boil it again, 'till it be almost as thick as an Electuary ; then dissolve in it (whilst it is very hot) the same weight of pure Nitre, as there is of Sugar.

To every Pound of the Electuary, add four Ounces of Balm of Gilead, two Ounces of our Balsamick Pouder before mention'd, one Ounce of factitious Cinnaber, in fine Pouder; and two Drams of Oyl of Juniper; mix all together, according to Art.

It is an excellent Cathartick in all Diseases which requires Purging, for it potently evacuates all vitious Humours promiscuouly out of the Body; it cureth the King's-Evil, Rheumatism, Gout, Dropfie, Scurvy, dry Belly-ach, and all curable Diseases.

The Dose is from two Drams to an Ounce. It may be given in the form of a Bolus, or dissolved in Ale, Whey, or any other liquid Vehicle, and taken in the Morning fasting.

Sal Chalybis noster, Our Salt of Steel, or Iron.

Take the finest Filings of Iron, or Steel, rectified Oyl of Vitriol, of each one Pound, mix them together in a large Earthen-Pan, well glazed; let it stand for two or three Hours, then pour into it two or three Quarts of fair Water, and it will presently effervesce, and the Salt will stick about the Pan; take it out, and keep it for use.

Tinctura

Tinctura Chalybis, The Tincture of Iron,
or Steel.

Take the finest Filings of Iron, or Steel, four Ounces; rectified Spirit of Nitre half a Pound; mix them together in an Earthen-Pan, well glazed, when the Effervescency is over, let it cool, and add to it Spirit of Wine rectified, five Pound, mix it well together, then filter it through brown Paper, and keep it for use.

Both of these Medicines are great Aperitives, opens all Obstructions, cures the Rickets, Green-sicknefs, Stoppage of the Terms, Yellow-Jaundice, &c. they strengthen the Stomach, kills Worms, and purifies the whole Mass of Blood.

You may give from half a Scruple, to half a Dram of the Salt, in any Vehicle, every Morning.

The Tincture may be taken from ten to forty Drops at a time, in Beer, Ale, or Wine.

Aqua Styptica nostra, Our Stiptick Water.

Take of pure white Vitriol, Roch-Alum, of each four Ounces, let them be poudred, and calcined in a Crucible, 'till it be red-hot, then quench it with Wine-Vinegar, and calcine it again.

Take

Take it out of the Crucible, and dissolve it in a Gallon of Spring-water ; add to it two Ounces of *Saccharum Saturni* ; then strain it, and keep it for use.

It cures the Itch, and all other Eruptions, the grieved Parts being wash'd with it three or four times in a day. It likewise cureth hollow Ulcers, and Fistula's, the Gonorrhæa in Men, and the Whites in Women.

You may inject it with a Syringe warm, twice in a day.

A N

I N D E X

O F T H E

C H A P T E R S,

Comprehending all the
Diseases of this B O O K.

The Contents of the First Book.

Chap.	Page
I. <i>O F the Head-ach.</i>	I
II. <i>Of the Palsie, and Apoplexy.</i>	13
III. <i>Of Convulsions, and the Epilepsie.</i>	22
IV. <i>Of the Night-mare, and Vertigo.</i>	35
V. <i>Of the Lethargy, Coma, Carus, and Catalepsie, or Catochus.</i>	38
VI. <i>Of the Phrensie, and Madnes</i>	44
VII. <i>Of Catarrhs.</i>	55

The

The Contents of the Second Book.

Chap.	Page
I. O F Shortness of Breathing.	69
II. Of the Pleurisie, and other Inflammations.	72
III. Of the Consumption, or Phtisick, and Hectick-Fever.	83
IV. Of the Palpitation of the Heart.	92
V. Of an universal Languishing, as also of Swouning, and Syncope.	96
VI. Of Fevers in General.	103
VII. Of Intermitting Fevers.	116
VIII. Of Malignant Fevers, and the Calenture.	124
IX. Of the Plague, or Pestilence.	129
X. Of the Small-pox, and Measles.	136

The Contents of the Third Book.

Chap.	Page
I. O F the thirsty Disease.	141
II. Of Hunger vitiated, or of a depraved Appetite.	144
III. Of	

III. Of want of Appetite, or loathing of Vi- ctuals.	148
IV. Of the Hiccet, or Hiccough.	152
V. Of Belching.	156
VI. Of Vomiting, and of the Cholerick, and Iliack Passion.	158
VII. Of Pain in the Stomack, and of various Pains of the Guts, as Colick, &c.	168
VIII. Of Worms.	179
IX. Of Loosenesses, or Fluxes of the Belly.	185
X. Of the dry Belly-ach.	196
XI. Of the Yellow-Jaundice.	202
XII. Of a Cachexy, or ill Habit of Body.	207
XIII. Of Dropsies.	211
XIV. Of the Scurvy, and Hypochondriack Suffocation, commonly called Fits of the Mother.	222
XV. Of the Green-sickness, and Suppression of the Courses.	231
XVI. Of the immoderate menstrual Flux, and the Whites in Women.	237
XVII. Of the Falling down of the Womb, and Fundament.	242
XVIII. Of Barrenness.	245
XIX. Of Abortion, or Miscarriage.	249
XX. Of hard Travel in Child-birth.	252
XXI. Of Nephritick Pains, and of the Stone in the Reins and Bladder.	257
XXII. Of extraordinary Pissing.	269
XXIII. Of involuntary Pissing, commonly called Pissing in Bed.	272
XXIV.	

XXIV. Of the Stoppage of Urine, and the Strangury.	274
XXV. Of the scalding or sharpness of Urine.	277
XXVI. Of Venereal Affects.	279
XXVII. Of the Rachites, or Rickets.	288
XXVIII. Of the Gout and Rheumatism.	303

Praxis



ENCHIRIDION MEDICVM:

OR A

MANUAL

OF

PHYSICK.

BOOK I.

CHAP. I.

Of the Head-ach.

THE Head-ach may be divided into three Kinds.

The first is the momentany Head-ach, it is *Cephalal-* called in Greek κεφαλαλγία, from κεφαλή, *Ca-* *gia.* put, and ἄλγος, *Dolor.*

The second is an inveterate Head-ach, and *Cephalaea.*
B is

is called in Greek κεφαλαία, *quod tegit Calvarium.*

Hemicrania.

The third is a Pain on one Part of the Head, before, behind, or on one side, this is called in Greek ἡμικεφάλιον, from κεφάλιον, *cranium*, and ἡμισυ, *dimidium.*

There is little difference between *Cephalæa* and *Cephalalgia*; onely *per Cephalæam affectæ partes multo redduntur quam in Cephalalgia debiliores.*

These distempers are caused by Halituouss vapours, and humours, fuming up (from the Stomach and other parts) to the Head.

Signs.

1. If the Pain be external, so that the Combing of the Head be troublesome, then the *Pericranium* is affected: But if the Pain be internal, reaching to the Eye-roots, then the *Dura mater* is invaded with the peccant humours.

2. If there be pricking distending Pain with great pulsation, it is from sharp Bilious humours or *Halitus*; but if the Pain be heavy, it is caused from viscous Phlegm or Melancholy.

Progn.

1. If a violent Head-ach come suddenly on a healthy Person, and the Party become dumb and snort, 'tis a mortal sign, unless a great Fever do immediately happen.

2. If corrupt waterish Matter or Bloud do issue out of the Nostrils, Mouth, Ears or Eyes (especially on the fourth Day) the sick will suddenly

suddenly recover; but if the Pain be very violent, and do suddenly vanish without a *Crisis*, 'tis doubtfull.

3. If the Pain be without a Fever, accompanied with noise in the ears, deafness, or megrim, with numbness of the extreme parts, an Apoplexy or Epilepsy, is at hand.

4. Those that have Cholerick stomachs, are most subject to a *Hemicrania*; and if it continue long, it causeth weakness of the Eyes, and sometimes blindness.

If the Head-ach proceed from Phlegmatick Viscous humours abounding, first give this Clyster.

Take of Vervain, Betony, Mallows, Mercury of each one handfull: Let them be cleansed, bruised and boiled in a Quart of Posset-drink, 'till half of it be boiled away, then strain it and dissolve in it one ounce of the Electuary *Caryocostinum*, Oil of Chamomel two ounces; mix it for a Clyster.

Sour things, and all that have a Lixivial salt, either fixt, or volatile, and all Aromatics do correct and amend the viscous Phlegmatick humours.

Let these forms serve for example.

Take the Waters of Baum, and Mint, of *Julep*, each three ounces; Cinamon-water, and *qua Cælestis*, of each half an ounce; Syrup of Fennel, and Mint, of each six drachms; spirit of Salt, as much as will make it of a

gratefull taste, mix it, and give three spoonfulls of it often.

Powder.

Take salt of Tartar vitriolated half a drachm; Cream of Tartar one drachm; white Sugar-candy two drachms; make it into a fine Powder for four Doses, which may be taken every morning and evening in white or Rhenish wine.

For the Rich you may prepare a medicinal Wine.

This may serve for example.

A medicinal Wine.

Take the Roots of Elicampane, *Calamus aromaticus*, of each one ounce; of Rue, Sage, Vervain, sweet Marjoram, of each three handfulls; Anise-feed, sweet Fennel-feed, of each an ounce and half; Orange-peel half an ounce; let them be cleansed, bruised and infused in two quarts of White-wine.

It may be given to three or four ounces in the morning fasting, with twenty drops of *Elixir proprietatis*, you may also give it by it self, at dinner and supper.

When the Wine is used, fresh Wine may be put to the Ingredients, for a second infusion.

But farther to correct, and gently evacuate the viscous Phlegmatick humours.

This opening Apozeme is effectual.

Apozeme.

Take of the five opening Roots of each two ounces, Liquorish an ounce and half; *Guaiacum* half a Pound, Anise-feed, sweet Fennel-

nel-feed, the Berries of Bays, and Juniper, of each half an ounce; Vervain, Betony, of each one handfull; let them be cleansed, bruised, and infused in two quarts of Rain-water very hot, for twenty four hours; then strain it out very strongly, and add the best Manna, Syrup of Roses solutive with Senna, of each four ounces; tincture of Cinamon three ounces; salt of Tartar vitriolated half an ounce; mix it, and give three ounces every morning fasting.

If there be need of stronger Physick you may administer these purging Pills. *Purgine Pills.*

Take of *Extract. Rudii, pil. fætidaë, Cochiaë*, of each half a drachm; *Mercurius dulcis* twenty grains; mix it for three Doses.

If the pain be old and stubborn, apply Vesicatories to the Neck, also Leeches to the Temples, and Hæmorrhoids; or open the jugular, or frontal Vein, which hath often prov'd effectual.

Errhines, Sternutatories and Apophlegmatifms may also be used, and Ventoses with Scarification if need require.

Baths of *Sulphur* (whether natural or artificial with Cephalick Herbs) are good to bathe the Head and whole Body.

Some approve of the fume of Amber, taken into the Mouth and Nostrils.

Also spirit of *cranium humanum*, or spirit of salt Armoniack, held to the Nose in a nar-

row-mouth'd Vial, giveth present ease in all cold Pains of the Head.

Also you may touch the Nostrils and Temples with Oil of Amber, or Nutmegs, or apply this Epitheme to the Temples and Forehead with Linnen-rags.

Epitheme. Take the Waters of Vervain and Betony, of each one ounce; Vineger of Roses, Ointment of Alabaſter, of each half an ounce; *Laudanum opiatum* one ſcruple; mix it.

Cold diſtempers of the head, may alſo be corrected by hot Cephalicks quilted in a Cap for the Head.

For a quilted Cap. Take of ſweet Marjoram, Stœchas, Vervain, Betony, Sage, Flowers of Chamomel, of each one handfull; Nutmegs, Cloves, Wood of Alloes, the Roots of Galangal, *Cyperus*, *Calamus aromat.* of each half an ounce; let them be all beaten into Powder for a quilted Cap.

Before you put it on, let the Hair be ſhaved cloſe, and the Head gently rub'd for ſome time, the better to open the pores.

Let the Sick abſtain from fat and viſcous Food, and let the mind be compos'd to chearfulneſs.

If the Juice of the *Pancreas* abounding in the Body, be over ſour, it cauſeth a vitious Efferveſcency, being oppos'd by Choler and Phlegm in the ſmall guts; from whence ſour
and

and ungratefull vapours may be sent to the Stomach, and thence to the Head.

If the humours be over four, the sense of *Signs.* hunger will be encreased, notwithstanding the Pain of the Head.

This distemper is to be cur'd by giving *Cure.* those things which temper, and amend the acid Juice in the Body, and do prevent its encrease.

Those things abounding with either a lixivial or volatile salt, do powerfully destroy this acid Juice; as Pearl, Crabs-eyes, Coral, Chalk, Amber, Bloud-stone, Filings of steel, &c.

Take this as a form of a Powder.

Take of Crabs-eyes, Pearl, red Coral pre- *Powder.* par'd, of each half a drachm; white Sugar half an ounce; let it be made into fine Powder for six Doses; which may be taken morning and evening in two or three spoonfulls of the following Cordial Julep.

Take Waters of Baum and Mint, of each *Cordial* three ounces; Scurvigrass-water two ounces; Cinamon-water, Syrup of Worm-wood, *Julep.* of each one ounce and half; Oil of Juniper one drachm; mix them together for a Julep, of which you may also give two or three spoonfulls every fourth hour.

I prescribe no Purgers in this Distemper, because I am taught by large Experience, that the four Humours in the Body may be

stirr'd up indeed, but not purg'd, unless with very great gripes, which will doe more hurt, than good.

The encrease of the acid Juice, may be prevented by abstaining from the use of acids.

Let the Patient's diet be moist, and fatty, as fat Broths, Jellies aromatiz'd, &c.

When the Head-ach proceedeth from a hot cause, if the Patient be costive, first give this Clyster.

Clyster. Take of Mercury, Violets, Lettice, Mal-lows, Dandelion, of each one handfull; Da-mask Prunes twenty; let them be cleansed, bruised and boiled in two pints of Fountain-water, till half of it be boiled away; then strain it, and add Electuary lenitive, one ounce and half; Oil of Lillies two ounces; mix them for a Clyster.

After its operation, you may open a Vein and draw eight or nine ounces of blood.

Some Authours will not consent to Phlebotomy in any Head-ach, except the Pain be intollerable; but I have had sufficient Experience, that it may be done safely in any Pain of the Head.

Elixir proprietatis, taken in Wormwood-wine, to the quantity of half a drachm at a time, a little before meat, doth wonderfully conduce to amend the vitious quality of Choler.

Choler

Choler may be evacuated by vomit, most commodiously by Antimonial preparations.

Take of the infusion of *Crocus Metallorum* one ounce; Oximel of Squills half an ounce. Give it in the morning.

Vomit.

But if the Patient be averse to vomiting, the Choler may be evacuated by stool, by this or the like Cathartick.

Take of Baum-water one ounce, Cinamon-water two drachms, Syrup of Roses solutive, the best Manna, of each half an ounce; Powder of Cream of Tartar twenty grains, *Diagredium* ten grains; mix it for a Potion, which may be given in the morning fasting.

*Purging
Potion.*

Also these most gratefull Tablets of Scammony may be prepared, and kept for use.

Take Cristals of Tartar two ounces; Scammony one ounce; white Sugar four ounces; with Gum Dragon dissolv'd in Rose-water as much as is sufficient; let it be made into Troches according to Art.

Troches.

Half a drachm of these Troches may be given to a Child with carefull governing; a Man or Woman may take two drachms of them.

They who are fearfull of Scammoniats, though safe and potent, let them take the following infusion.

Take of choice Rhubarb two drachms; Cream of Tartar one drachm; infuse them in four ounces of Endive-water for a night; then

*Purging
Infusion.*

then strain it and add Syrup of Roses solutive, Syrup of Cicory with Rhubarb, of each half an ounce, Cinamon-water two drachms; give it in the morning fasting: This Electuary is also an excellent Cholagogue.

Electuary.

Take the Pulp of Damask-prunes ten ounces; Powder of Scammony, Cream of Tartar, of each two ounces, Rhubarb ten drachms, Cinamon half an ounce; yellow Sanders two drachms; the best Manna, Syrup of Cicory with Rhubarb, of each eight ounces; mix all together into an Electuary according to Art.

The Dose is from two drachms, to half an ounce, taken either in a Bolus, or dissolved in a sufficient quantity of Endive-water, or any other convenient vehicle.

Observation.

These excellent Medicines do not onely purge Choler abounding, but purify the Bloud and other Humours; and here we may note, that if a purging Medicine do not operate according to Expectation, it may safely be repeated the same day without any danger.

If the Head-ach be accompanied with a great Fever, and Thirst be augmented; the following Medicines will much conduce to assuage it.

Julep.

Take of Barley-water two pints; Cinamon-water two ounces; Syrup of Violets four ounces; salt *Prunella* half an ounce; mix it, and

and give the sick three or four spoonfulls of it often.

This Tincture is also very effectual

Take of Barley-water two pints; Red-rose-^{Tincture} buds one ounce; spirit of Vitriol twenty drops, or as much as is sufficient to make it of a good Tincture, let it infuse all Night, then strain it, and add Syrup of Jujubes four ounces; mix it, and give three or four spoonfulls every three hours.

If an Emulsion may please better, take this following form.

Take of sweet Almonds one ounce; the ^{Emulsion} four greater Cold-seeds of each half an ounce; white Poppy-seeds two ounces; let the Almonds be blanched, and all well beaten in a stone Mortar; then with four pints of Barley-water, make an Emulsion; strain it, and add Syrup of the Juice of Limmons, *Diacodium*, of each three ounces; Cinamon-water two ounces; of which let the sick drink often, four spoonfulls at a time.

You may also have a little fine Sugar, and salt *Prunella* equally mixt, which may be kept in the Mouth, to deceive the Thirst.

But where rest is hindred by the Choler abounding, and cannot be obtain'd by the Emulsion, which gently procureth sleep; you may dissolve two grains of *Laudanum opiat.* in two or three spoonfulls of it, and give it
at

at night ; or you may order this or the like Julep.

Julep.

Take the Waters of Lettice, Water-lillies of each two ounces ; Syrup of red Poppies one ounce ; Cinamon-water half an ounce ; *Laudanum opiatum* four grains ; Oil of Vitriol fix drops ; mix it, and give four spoonfulls of it to cause sleep.

This Epitheme may be applied to the Temples, and Fore-head with Linnen-rags.

Epitheme.

Take the Oils of Violets, and Water-lillies of each half an ounce ; the waters of red Roses, Lettice, and Houseleek, of each two ounces ; Vineger of Roses half an ounce ; mix it.

You may also anoint the Temples and Fore-head with this Ointment.

Ointment.

Take the Ointment of Alabaſter, Populion, Oil of Mandrakes, of each half an ounce ; mix it.

Let the Patient's diet be Mutton or Veal-broth without ſalt.

When a ſalt Catarrh, or the like ſpittle is the cauſe of Thirſt augmented, you may adminiſter a Pill of *Styrax*, or *Cynogloſſon*, which will temperate the ſaltneſs of the humours ; and if ſalt ſerous matter abound in the Bloud, you may purge it by Stool and Urine, for which there are variety of Medicines preſcrib'd in the Chapter of Catarrhs.

C H A P. II.

Of the Palsie, and Apoplexy.

THE Palsie is called in Greek *παράλυσις*, *quod a παραλύνω, i.e. a solvendo*, *Paralysis*
eo quod nervorum genus resolutum, facultate ani-
mi defluere prohibita sensu motuque destituatur.

It may be also called *ἡμιπληξία, i. e. di-*
midia Apoplexia.

In Latin it is called *nervorum resolutio vel*
relaxatio.

It is a Privation of sense and motion of one
 side of the Body, or of some particular part.

The Apoplexy is called in Greek *ἀποπληξία*, *ex ἀποπλήσσειν, percutior, attonitum*
reddo. *Apoplexia*

In Latin 'tis called *stupor corporis*, it being
 an Abolition of sense and motion through
 the whole Body.

The parts affected are the Brain, *Spinalis*
medulla and Nerves; the motion of the Ani-
 mal spirits through them being deprav'd.

The causes are either external, or internal. *Causes*

The external is much cold and moisture,
 which doth chill and over moisten the Head,
 and extreme parts; and this seems to prove *Cause in-*
 that phlegmatick and watry Humours abi- *ternal.*
 ding about the Ventricles of the Brain, and
 Nerves,

Nerves, may over moisten, and perhaps so far loosen the Tunicles or Membranes of them, that it may render them unfit to let the Animal spirits pass through them; hence it is that sometimes one particular Member hath been Paralytick by too much Cold and Moisture; and sometimes more parts have more or less lost sense and motion.

It is the opinion of most eminent Physicians both ancient and modern; that the Animal spirits being severed from the Blood in the Brain, &c. are from thence carried through all the Nerves to exercise the external senses and Animal motion; which is continual and equal in healthy persons, but changeable and unequal, according to the divers diseases of the Body or Mind.

Wherefore when no Animal spirits are carried to the Organs of the external Senses, or Animal motion; the functions of seeing, smelling, tasting, hearing and touching: and the sense of heat, as also of motion in the Palsie and Apoplexy, cease all that time.

Signs.

The Signs of the Palsie are manifest; to wit, deprivation of sense and motion of the Paralytick parts; the Eye, and half the Tongue, (*viz.* of that side affected) is much weakned, and deprav'd.

The signs of the Apoplexy approaching are these, a sudden crying out for help, with an abolition of sense and motion.

I. If

1. If the Palsie, or Apoplexy do invade the sick in the decrease of the Moon, and the Patient be old, 'tis an ill sign. *Progn.*

2. If the sick do snort, and is drouthy, and cast spume or froth out of the Mouth, and have great sweat with difficult breathing, 'tis mortal. But if the Person be young, and a strong Fever immediately happen, 'tis a good sign; for the Fever consumes the superfluous moisture, and makes a Dissipation of the gross and phlegmatick Matter.

3. A Palsie coming after the Apoplexy is ill, and many times turns to the Apoplexy again.

When any of the extreme parts be Paralytical, or when the Head is ill affected by the external coldness of Air, Water or Snow; or a stoppage of the Head be also bred thereby, or the defect of the Animal spirits chiefly urge; then the sick may be cur'd by driving out whatsoever cold has pierc'd into the Head, or any other parts of the Body, which may be done by spirituous and volatile Sudorificks; for they do not onely alter and correct the cause of Cold, and other Evils accompanying it, but do also amend the harm entring into the Body, containing, and contained. *Cure.*

To this end I commend this following Form.

Take of Treacle-water one ounce; Fennel-water, and Epidemical-water, of each two ounces; Syrup of red Poppies, and Syrup of *Cordial & cause sweat.*
of

of the Juice of Scurvigrafs, of each half an ounce ; Bezoar-mineral, Antimony Diaphoretick, of each ten grains ; *Laudanum opiat.* three grains ; Spirit of salt Armoniack twenty drops ; Oil of Cloves four drops ; mix it, give the sick three or four spoonfulls of it, and expect to sweat, being meanly covered ; and a spoonfull every half hour afterward, till the sweat break forth ; then give them some pure Broth, with a little Wine in it, whereby strength may be recreated, and the Patient enabled to bear a Sweat longer ; for nothing so much helps the sick as a sweat continued mildly a while, which experience hath often taught me.

For by the help of this spirituous, and volatile, and also Aromatick medicine, or one like it, the troublesome Cold, and dulness of motion are discust.

Observation.

They who let blood in this Distemper caused by external Cold ; or think they can carry out the Cause of this Evil either by vomit or siege, put the sick into danger of death, or at least of most grievous Evils.

But when phlegmatick and watry Humours stick about the Nerves, &c. And too much moistening and loosening their Membranes and Marrow, be the cause of the Palsie and Apoplexy, and if the same humours much abound in the Body ; then Phlegmagogues, and Hydragogues may conduce to
the

the Cure, after Clysters, and internal Aromatick Sudorificks.

Wherefore to begin the Cure of this; you may first give this or the like Clyster, which must be made strong.

Take of sweet Marjoram, Betony, Sage, Penny-royal, Hyssop, Rue, Mercury, Marsh-mallows, the lesser Centaury, the Flowers of Chamomel, and Stœchas, of each half a handfull; Anise-seed, sweet Fennel-seed, Juniper-berries, of each half an ounce; let them be cleansed, bruised and boiled in a quart of Fountain-water, till half of it be boiled away; then strain it, and dissolve in it the Electuary *Diaphœnicon, benedicta laxativa*, of each half an ounce; *pil. Cochiae* twenty grains; common Salt one drachm; Oil of Rue two ounces; mix it for a Clyster.

The next day (if the sick have a Plethorick body) you may draw bloud from either arm, to eight or nine ounces.

If Phlebotomy cannot be done, apply Ventoses with Scarification to the shoulders; afterward sweat the Patient with the aforesaid Sudorifick.

Sometimes Suppositories may be used instead of Clysters.

This may serve for Example.

Take the Powders of *Coloquintida*, Salt-niter, *Hiera-picra* simple, of each one drachm; *Euphorbium* half a drachm, Honey boiled as much as will make it into a Suppository.

C

But

But if it appear that phlegmatick and viscous Humours do abound in the Body, Purgers may be prescrib'd most conveniently in the form of a Pill, because the Gums are most apt (above all other Medicines) to loosen and cut viscous Phlegm; neither can they be easily dissolv'd in any liquor.

Let this, or such a like form of Pills serve.

*Purging
Pills.*

Take the Gums *Amoniacum*, and *Galbanum*, of each two drachms; dissolve them in Vineger of Squills, strain it, and boil it, to a due consistence; then add Powders of Troches, *Albandal*, Scammony, Mastick, of each one drachm; Oil of Anise-seed eight drops; make it into a Mass of Pills according to Art.

Let the sick take five or six small Pills of this in the morning fasting, and an hour after drink some thin broth.

If the humours be more serous, I commend this Electuary.

*Purging
Electuary.*

Take Juniper-berries one pound; boil them in six pints of Fennel-water, till half of it be boiled away; then add the Fruit of Tamarind eight ounces, and pulp them both through a Sieve: To which add Powder of Jalap, and Scammony prepar'd, of each three ounces; Cinamon, sweet Fennel-seed, of each half an ounce; white Sugar one pound, make it into an Electuary according to Art.

The dose of this effectual Medicine, is to half an ounce, to people of age; a Child may take

take from half a drachm, to a drachm, either by it self, or dissolv'd in Whey, or Parsley-water, or in any other convenient Vehicle.

After universal evacuation hath been made, and the Patient's stomach be still nauseous, this vomit may safely be given.

Take the Infusion of *Crocus metallor.* *Vi-Vomit.* negar of Squills of each one ounce, give it in the morning with Care: After the operation of it, give some of this Cordial Julep.

Take the Waters of Sage, Couflips, Lil- *Cordial* lies of the Valley, of each two ounces; Ci- *Julep.* namon-water one ounce; Syrup of Peony-flowers, Stœchas, of each six drachms; Spirit of *Castor* two drachms; Spirit of Salt as much as will make it of a gratefull taste, of which you may give the sick three or four spoonfulls every fourth hour.

To correct a slow ferment, and also to amend Phlegmatick viscous humours, a Medicinal Wine may be prepared for the rich, in this form.

Take the Roots of Galangal, Elecampane, *Medici-* of each half an ounce; the tops of Worm- *nal Wine.* wood, Mint and Calamint, of each one handfull; Powder of Cinamon, Anise-seed, of each half an ounce; Nutmegs two drachms; let them be cleansed, bruised and infused in six pints of White-wine.

The sick may drink of this Physick-wine at dinner and supper, adding to every draught,

draught, five or six drops of *Elixir proprietatis*.

When the wine is almost consum'd, more may be poured on, till it cease to be Aromatic.

External means for the Palsie, and Apoplexy are also to be used.

Bathing is much commended, both natural and artificial; and how excellent it is daily experience doth manifest.

This artificial Bath, or one like it, may be prescrib'd, where a natural sulphureous or nitrous Bath cannot be had.

Bath.

Take Sage, Penny-royal, Betony, Organ, sweet Marjoram, Hyssop, Rue, Time, Ground-pine, of each six handfulls; Flowers of Chamomel, Melilot, of each four handfulls; Roots of Briony, Pellitory of Spain, of each four ounces; Bay-berries, Juniper-berries of each three ounces; Brimstone six pound; Saltniter two pound; let all be bruised and boiled in twenty Gallons of Spring-water, till the third part be consumed.

Let the sick be well bathed with this as often as strength will permit.

After bathing, anoint the hinder part of the Head and Neck, and down the *Vertebra* of the Back with this Oil; upon which let a Fox-skin drest be worn.

Oil.

Take Chymical-oils, of Juniper-berries, Turpentine, Spike, of each half an ounce;
Oils

Oils of Chamomel, Earth-worms, Rue, Foxes, of each one ounce; Spirit of *Castor* two drachms; mix it.

This plaister may be applyed to the Head.

Take *Galbanum*, *Opopanax*, of each half an ounce; Mustard-seed, white Pepper, *Euphorbium*, *Castor*, of each two drachms; Chymical Oil of Sage and Rue, of each twenty drops; Oil of Spike and Turpentine, of each a drachm; make it into a Plaister which you may spread on leather, and apply it warm to the Head. *Plaister.*

Or you may make the quilted Cap as is prescrib'd in page 6. to wear constantly; Oil of Nutmegs is good to embrocate the Ears and Nostrils; also Errhines, Sternutatories, and Apophlegmatisms may be used with good success.

Take *Castor*, sweet Marjoram, Betony, Root of white Hellebor, of each a drachm; beat them all into a fine Powder. Blow up some of this Powder (with a quill) into the Nostrils, to cause sneezing. *Sneezing Powder.*

Let the Patient's diet be such as may not breed Phlegm, and let it be thin and spare, as Water-gruel, in which boil some Mace; or you may make Broth of Mutton, &c. in which boil Sage, Rosemary, Time, sweet Marjoram, Couflips, &c.

Of this broth you may make Panado's

with the Crums of white Bread, and the Yelk of an Egg.

Let Anise-seed, or sweet Fennel-seed be baked with the bread.

Abstain from all clammy Diet, as Fish and Milk, &c. and eat little or no supper.

C H A P. III.

Of Convulsions, and the Epilepsie.

Spasmus. **T**HE Cramp or Convulsion is called in Greek *σπασμὸς*, in Latin *Convulsio*.

It is a very painfull, involuntary Contraction of the Nerves and Muscles towards their Original.

There are generally two sorts of Convulsions. *viz.* A true Convulsion, and a Convulsive motion.

A true Convulsion is either universal or particular.

Of the universal there are three Kinds.

The first is called in Greek *ἐμπροσδόν*; in Latin *tentio ad anteriora*; when the Body and Head is drawn forward.

The second is called *ὀπισδόν*, and in Latin *tentio ad posteriora* when the Head and Body is drawn backward

The

The third is called *τέτανος* in Greek, and *distentio* in Latin, in this the whole Body is inflexible.

The particular convulsions are various.

If it be in the Eye, it is called *strabismus*.

That of the Mouth, is call *tortura oris*, &c.

The Falling-sickness or Epilepsie, is called *Epilepsia*. in Greek *ἐπιληψία*, ab *ἐπιλαμβάνω*, *invado*, quod *sensum atque mentem pariter apprehendat*.

It is called also in Latin *Epilepsia vel invasio*; item *morbus hominem ita invadens, ut retineat & sistat sensuum actiones*, because the mind and senses in this disease are suddenly surprized.

It may be called *morbus caducus*, a *cadendo*, or *morbus puerilis* because it is most subject to Children; or more properly *noverca puerorum*, quod *eos male tractat*.

It is also called *Herculeus*, & *Elephantiasis* a *magnitudine*, because it is difficult to cure.

Some call it *morbus lunaticus*, because the sick are most subject to the fits at the change of the moon; but enough of the Names.

The Epilepsie is an universal Cramp or Convulsion of the whole Body, with deprivation of sense and motion in the time of the fit.

The parts affected are not onely the Brain, *Partes aff-* *Cerebellum* and *Spinalis medulla*, but all the *fecte*. Nerves and Muscles.

The causes are either external or internal. *Causes.*

The external, may be by the biting of some venemous Creature; or by a wound or puncture of a Nerve or Tendon.

Sometimes it may be caused by surfeiting or drunkenness; and also by the taking of Hellebor, &c.

It may be also caused by a mineral Gas fuming from the Mines of Lead, or Antimony, &c. which infecteth the Air with noxious metalline exhalations of a venomous malignity; which is many times the cause of Convulsions, as they can tell by experience, that live near those Mines.

The internal causes are acrimonious and flatuous Vapours, rising from the small guts, because of over viscous Phlegm, and the over acidity and tartness of the Juice of the Pancreas, which causeth a vitious effervescency of the humours, by which the *Lympha* is also rendred very sharp.

These four flatuous Vapours continually ascending to the Head, together with the spirituous substance of the Bloud, and going forward into the Ventricles of the Brain, and *Cerebellum*, and so to the first spreading of the Nerves; and corroding them, causeth an inordinate agitation, and very fierce motion of the Animal spirits; and by a continual and grievous Irritation, urging about the beginning of the *Spinalis medulla*, is the cause of an universal Convulsion, or Epileptick-fit,

n which all the Muscles of the Body are most vehemently contracted.

The Irritation in a particular Convulsive motion or the Cramp, which may be oft observ'd in the thigh or leg, and other extreme parts, may be also ascrib'd to the same sharp and sour flatuous Vapours, carried to the beginning of the Nerves and Tendons of the said Members, fretting and gnawing them sometimes with great pain.

The signs of Convulsions are manifest. *Signs.*

The preceding signs of the Epilepsie, are trembling, sadness, fearfulness, *vertigo*, numbness, debility of the senses, troublesome sleep, with great pain of the Head.

The signs of the Epilepsie presently approaching, are a vehement shaking of the whole Body, foaming at the Mouth, and a sudden deprivation of all the Animal functions.

1. A Convulsion or Epilepsie, being hereditary, is incurable. *Progn.*

2. If a pregnant Woman be taken with either of them, it is very dangerous; and also after Abortion.

3. Children are most subject to these diseases, because they abound with abundance of moisture, and flatulent Vapours in the Brain; and because they have *Nervorum poros angustos*, whereby the Brain is easily filled with such vapours; and therefore we see that Children are often troubled with them

them, young People more rarely, and old Folks but seldom; and we find that Children better suffer them than either of the other, who frequently die of these fits, especially of the Epilepsie, when in their falling there follows snorting, gnashing of the teeth, a ghastly countenance, much foam at the Mouth, *involuntaria seminis effusio*, and great cryings out.

4. Of all the kind of Convulsions, Tetanos is the most difficult to cure; because it is (as it were) composed of the other two kinds; but if a fever happen in this or any other Convulsion, the sick will suddenly recover, because a fever dissolveth it; but if a Convulsion should succeed a fever, it is very dangerous, especially from a wound, or proceeding from venemous matter.

So likewise it is very dangerous if it be caused by taking of Hellebor.

Cure.

When a particular Convulsion is caused from a prick of a Nerve or Tendon; as it may happen sometimes by the unskilfulness, or precipitancy of the Chyrurgeon in opening a vein, then most speedily pour into the wound or puncture, the Oil of Turpentine, with rectifi'd Spirit of Wine, both actually hot; as that famous Chyrurgeon Mr. *Ambrose Parey* adviseth in his ninth Book, Chap. II. of which I have had large experience with good success.

The

The like course may be taken with all other wounds of the nervous parts.

But if the wound of the Nerve or Tendon yield not to this medicine, the same is to be cut asunder cross-ways, seeing it is safer to lose the action of one part, than that the sick should be exposed to the danger of a deadly Convulsion.

When the Nerves or Tendons of the Muscles are prickt by sharp splinters of bones, the grievous pains succeeding, soon cause a particular Convulsion of that part, and at length an universal Convulsion will attend the Patient, if there be not speedy help.

Wherefore if possible, the sharp fragments of the bone must be cut away; or if this have been neglected, or could not be done, and an universal Convulsion be feared, you must hasten to amputation of the member; For, *Necessitas non habet legem*.

If a particular Convulsion be occasion'd by a hot Tumour or any other sharp pain, which hath rais'd an inflammation; let the pain be diminish'd as well by internal, as external Anodynes and Narcoticks, to allay the over increas'd motion of the Animal spirits.

To this end you may give the sick two or three grains of *Laudanum opiat.* at a time, either in a Pill, or dissolve it in a little Wine or other convenient Vehicle.

And if the ingenious and judicious Physician,

cian, or Chyrurgeon, do add a little volatile Salt, either of Animals or Vegetables, to his topical Medicaments, whether fomentations, Cataplasms, or Ointments, he will wonder at the incredible benefit; for by the help thereof the Tumour will be mollified and dissolved, the internal obstruction loosned, and the pain eased.

If a Convulsion be caused by the taking of Hellebor, or any other venemous matter; administer an Antimonial vomit with all speed.

But if it be a Child, give it ten grains of Salt of Vitriol, or half an ounce of Oxymel of Squills, with a drachm of Oil of Almonds.

After the operation of the Emetick, (and also at other times) you may give some of this Julep.

Julep.

Take of Black-cherry-water, the Water of Line-flowers of each two ounces; Briony-water compound, Syrup of Peony, of each one ounce; Tincture of Castor half an ounce; Confection of Alkermes one drachm; Spirit of Salt Armoniack twenty drops; mix it, and give three or four spoonfulls every fourth Hour.

Having briefly hinted at the Cure of particular Convulsions; I come now to those more universal, as likewise Convulsive motions, and the Epilepsie.

And seeing there is little difference, in the remote causes of them in the Body; these diseases may (for the most part) be cured with the same Remedies.

I. First

1. First then the peccant humours are to be temper'd, and diminish'd.

2. The rising of vapours is to be hindred, and their expulsion procur'd by sweat, or insensible transpiration: By which the over motion of the Animal spirits will be restrain'd and brought to tranquillity, that is a more quiet motion.

All Aromaticks, and all things abounding with either a fixt or volatile Salt, do not only correct, and by cutting amend the viscous phlegmatick humours; but do powerfully temper and destroy the over acidity and tartness of the juice of the Pancreas.

To temper and diminish these humours, I commend these medicines.

Take the Roots of Male-peony, Valerian, *Infusion.*
Mistletoe of the Oak, and Peony-seeds, of each two ounces; Castor half an ounce; let them be all bruised, and infus'd in Peony-water compound, the Water of Line-tree-flowers, of each one pint, for the space of twenty four hours; then strain it out very strongly, and add Syrup of Peony and Stœchas, of each three ounces; Spirit of Castor half an ounce; mix it, and give three spoonfulls at a time every fourth hour, with which you may mix Spirit of Salt Armoniack, *Elixir propri-*
etatis, of each six drops.

Also you may give the Patient half a drachm of the following powder in three or four

four spoonfulls of this Infusion, with the aforesaid Spirit and *Elixir*.

Take of Crabs-eyes, Salt of Tartar vitriolated, Salt *prunella*, of each half an ounce; volatile Salt of Harts-horn, Salt of Amber, of Man's skull prepar'd, of each two drachms; make it into a fine powder, which may be taken half a drachm at a time, morning and evening.

The peccant humours being temper'd and diminish'd, by the frequent use of the above-said medicines; the inordinate, involuntary and impetuous motion of the Animal spirits, (in Convulsive and Epileptick fits) will be the better reduc'd to a calm and voluntary motion, by the help of volatile and spirituous Sudorificks, mixt with Anodines, and Narcotick medicines us'd in a small quantity, and at times; which two will be expedient to be given together, because then they will the better circulate to the Animal spirits, and temper and educe the hurtfull flatuous Vapours.

For which I commend the following form.

*Cordial to
cause
Sweat.*

Take of Treacle-water, Fennel-water, of each one ounce; Syrup of Peony, Syrup of the Juice of Scurvigrafs, of each half an ounce; Antimony Diaphoretick, Bezoar mineral, Crabs-eyes in powder, of each ten grains; *Laudanum opiat.* four grains; Tincture of *Castor* one drachm; Oil of Cloves three drops; Spirit

Spirit of Salt Armoniack ten drops; mix it, and let the sick take it, being well cover'd with cloths, whereby the sweat will the easier come forth.

If the Body be costive, let it be made soluble by a Clyster, or Suppository; such as is prescrib'd in the cure of the Apoplexy.

As often as the Stomach is nauseous, or the sick inclines to vomiting; let the Emetics before mention'd be carefully administered; and likewise three or four days before the full of the moon.

But if the sick be averse to vomiting, and Pills or Potions are more acceptable, take the following as Examples.

Take of *Extract. Rudij, pil. fœtidæ ex duobus*, of each a drachm and half; Castor, black Hellebor prepar'd, of each half a drachm; Salt of Amber twenty grains; Oil of Rosemary twenty drops, with Syrup of Stœchas; make it into a Mass for pills; of which you may give half a drachm twice a week.

Purging
Pills.

Also this purging Infusion is very effectual.

Take of the best Senna, Rhubarb, and Cream of Tartar, of each an ounce and half; Liquorish, and the five opening Roots, of each one ounce; *Guaiacum*, China-roots, of each six ounces; Mistletoe of the Oak, Anise-feed, sweet Fennel-feed, Bay-berries, and Juniper-berries, of each half an ounce; let them be all

Infusion

all bruised, and infused in Black-cherry-water, and the Water of Line-tree-flowers, of each a quart, very hot for the space of a Night; then strain it very hard, and add Syrup of Roses solutive with Senna, Syrup of Succory with Rhubarb, of each three ounces; Cinamon-water two ounces; Salt of Tartar vitriolated half an ounce; mix it.

Let the sick take four ounces of this purging Infusion every morning, whereby the viscous humours and flatuous Vapours may be both corrected, and also evacuated gently by degrees.

If bloud abound, let a Vein be opened; in Women open the *Saphæna* in either Foot, but in Men you may apply Leeches to the Hemorrhoidal Veins. &c.

Bathing hath been often us'd (with good success) in these diseases.

A natural sulphureous Bath, such as is in the City of *Bath*, is excellent; but when it is not to be had, an artificial Bath may serve.

That which is set down in the Cure of the Palsie and Apoplexy, is of excellent Virtue, and very effectual in these distempers.

After bathing, let the *Spina Dorsi*, and other affected parts be anointed with the following Ointment.

Ointment. Take the Oils of *Euphorbium*, Rue, Castor, Petre, Spike, Turpentine, Bricks, Dil, Chamomel, of each half an ounce; Oils of Amber
and

and Juniper, of each two drachms; the Ointments *Martiatum* and *Aregon* of each one ounce; mix them for an Ointment.

Issues are approved of, either in the Neck, or Arm; also Ventoses with Scarification, Sternutatories, Errhines and Masticatories are all commended.

This Masticatory may serve for Example. *Mastica-*

tory.

Take the Roots of Pellitory of *Spain*, Ginger, *Calamus aromaticus*, of each one ounce; Mustard-seed; all sorts of Pepper, Nutmegs, Castor, Mastick, of each half an ounce; beat them all into fine Powder, and with fine Honey boild into a Syrup, make them into Troches according to Art.

When they are drie you may chew them one after another, when you please to draw the Rheum out of the Mouth.

When the fit is coming, or upon the party, blow up some Sneezing-powder into the Nostrils, or the Smoak of Tobacco into the Mouth.

Embrocate the Temples, Fore-head and Nostrils with Oil of Amber; and hold the Spirit of Salt Armoniack to the Nose, in a Narrow-mouth'd viol.

Make a noise in the Ears; and let the sick be kept in a light Room, with the Head upright.

Let the teeth be kept open with a stick, or rather with a little *viscus quercinus*, if it may be had.

D

Let

Let the soles of the feet be well rub'd with Salt and Vineger; also Frictions and Ligatures may be used in the parts affected.

Some commend a Pigeon cut afunder, and applied hot to the Navel; for hereby the venomous halituous Vapours are partly drawn away.

I might add variety of medicines for the cure of these diseases; but those before mentioned are sufficient to give light to the ingenious Artist, who knows how to prepare diversity of them, as well milder for Infants and Children, as stronger for Adults.

I will therefore prescribe a powder to preserve Children from Convulsive and Epileptick-fits, and so conclude this Chapter.

*Epileptick
Powder.*

Take the Roots of Peony, Valerian, of each half an ounce; the Moss that groweth upon a Man's skull, the triangular Bone of a Man's skull prepar'd, Mistletoe of the Oak, Elks-hoof, the Seeds of Peony, sweet Fennel and Annise, of each two drachms; red Coral, whitest Amber, and Emerald prepar'd, of each one drachm; white Sugar the weight of them all, let them be reduc'd into a fine powder.

You may give a Child twenty grains of this powder with a little Oil of sweet Almonds, so soon as it is born, which may happily preserve it from Convulsions, and Epileptick fits.

And because obstructions of the Belly in Children,

Children, exposeth them to flatuous Vapours, and Gripings, and so consequently to Convulsive and Epileptick-fits; I advise you to keep the Belly open, either with a little Manna, or a Carminative Clyster, so often as you see convenient.

Let the sick live in a serene Air, and abstain from all food that breeds bad nourishment, and flatulent Vapours.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Night-mare, and Vertigo.

I Shall treat of these two distempers in one Chapter, because if either of them continue long; they are Forerunners of the Palsie, or Apoplexy, and sometimes Convulsions, or Epilepsie.

The Night-mare is called in Greek *ἐφιάλτης*, *Incubus*. in Latin 'tis called *Incubus ab incubando, quod externa vis quædam aut moles incubare videtur.*

It is called the Night-mare, because it oppresseth the sick in the Night, at which time they think that some great weight lieth upon them, by which they seem to be almost suffocated.

It happens most commonly after the first
D 2 sleep,

sleep, whereby the party oppressed, is deprived of speech and motion, and sometime breathing for a time.

When the fit is upon the sick, they do imagine that some Witch or Hag lieth hard on their Breast or Stomach, (from whence it hath also acquired that Name) in which they cannot stir, nor call for help, though they have a great desire, and do strive very much to cry out, but are possessed with a panick fear.

Cause.

The cause of this distemper, is most commonly intemperance in eating and drinking, especially in the Night; whereby crude halituous Vapours are bred in such plenty, that nature cannot disperse nor dissolve them before sleep; and therefore they are raised up to the Ventricles of the Brain, by which imagination, sense and motion are all depraved.

The giddy motion is called in Greek *σκόρμα*, i. e. *obscuritas oculorum*.

Vertigo.

In Latin 'tis called *Vertigo*, ex *vertendo quod Caput vertere videtur*.

In this disease the Animal spirits are wrong mov'd, which makes the sick believe that not onely all things they look on, go in a Circuit about, but their Head and other parts, seem to turn round; which many times causeth them to be in danger of falling, or tumbling headlong.

The

The cause of the giddy motion, is either *cause.*
external, or internal.

The external are either an intent looking at any object that turns round, or about, especially if very remote; or a frequent turning about of the Body it self.

The internal cause, is the ascent of flatuous Vapours to the Head, together with the spirituous part of the Bloud, and carried with the Animal spirits, into the passages of the Brain, and *Cerebellum*; by which the motion of wheeling about is communicated to the Animal spirits, and anon carried to the Cristalline humour of the Eyes, by the Optick nerves; and so a Giddiness seems to be produc'd.

For the Cure of these diseases; seeing they are the Forerunners of the Apoplexy, and Epilepsie; I refer you to those excellent Medicines prescrib'd for the Cure of them.

Let such as are subject to these distempers, be very sparing in their diet; let them avoid all Herbs, Roots and Fruits, that are windy; and all viscous and gross diet, such as is of hard Concoction.

Let the external Causes be remov'd, and the internal causes corrected. *Sublata causa tollitur effectus.*

C H A P. V.

Of the Lethargy Coma, Carus, and Catalepsie or Catocus.

Lethargus. **T**HE Lethargy is called in Greek λήθαργος ἀπὸ τῆς λήθης καὶ ἀργίας, *id est, ab oblivione & inertia.* Because in this disease, the sick is very forgetfull and slothfull.

Signs. In this distemper, there is a very great propensity to sleep, accompanied with a Symptomatical Fever, and sometimes with the Hiccough, with difficulty of breathing, dulness of the Head, and many times a deprivation of the Senses.

Coma. Κώμα, *sopor altus*, is an insatiable inclination to sleep; the sick being called unto, they open their Eyes, and answer, but presently fall a sleep again.

Carus. Κάρος, ex Καρῶν, is called in Latin *crapularis redundantia*; because it is sometimes caused by surfeiting, and drunkenness.

It is deep and profound sleep, whereby imagination, sense and motion are all depraved.

In these there is no Fever, in which they differ from the Lethargy.

Catalepsis, vel Detentio, is called in Greek Κάτοχτος, which signifies a with-holding, or

restraining, because in this distemper, the mind, with the senses, and motion are all suddenly surprized, so that the sick remain stiff, and immoveable, in the very same posture in which they were taken, with their Eyes open.

The causes of these diseases are either *Causes.* external, or internal.

The external causes are gross food, idleness, spirituous wine, or any other inebriating liquor taken in excess; and sometimes by the Air inspir'd, which is defil'd by the Smoak of Coals, or other mineral Fumes, by which the Air may be infested.

The internal cause, is a Narcotick force mix'd with the Animal spirits, bred by degrees in the Body, by the frequent use of opiats, not well corrected, which not onely dulls the mind, but causeth a sluggishness of the whole Body; for the Animal motion being deprav'd, the external, as well as internal senses, will be thence soon infected, and defil'd.

These diseases are all very dangerous, and *Progn.* except they are speedily cur'd, they will soon hurry the sick into the Boats of *Acheron*, or devouring Jaws of Death.

But if a Phrensie cometh immediately after any of them, it cureth the Patient with little help of medicine.

To cure these diseases, let the drowsie Ani- *Cure.*
mal

mal spirits be stir'd up, and rais'd from sleepiness, and stupidity, by potent external Objects, which may sharply move the external senses; let the sick be kept in a light room, and be often called upon very strongly, and let sharp smells be applied to the Nostrils, such as Spirit of Salt Armoniack, Harts-horn, &c.

Also sharp spices or salts should be put into the mouth, and gentle frications us'd (with warm Cloaths) to those parts that are affected with Numness.

The Animal spirits may be freed from the Narcotick force mingled with them, (and likewise slothfulness, and sleepiness may be (by little and little) diminished,) by the frequent use of sharp volatile Salts, and all Medicines endued with an Aromatick biting; such as Pepper, Cloves, Castor, Garlick, Horse-radish, Mustard, Scurvigrafs, &c. Of which you may make diversity of Medicines, for example.

Zulep. Take the Waters of Hedge-mustard, Scurvigrafs, of each two ounces, Syrup of the Juice of Scurvigrafs one ounce; Tincture of Castor two drachms; Oil of Cloves four drops; mix it, and give the sick two or three spoonfulls every two hours.

This decoction is also very effectual.

Decoction. Take the Rcots of Horse-radish, the best China, of each two ounces; Roots of Galan-
gal

gal half an ounce; Scurvigrafs, Hedge-mustard, of each one handfull; Cloves one drachm; let them be all cleansed, bruised and infused in White-wine, and Fountain-water, of each a quart, for the space of a Night very hot; the next morning boil it gently for half an hour, then strain it, and add Syrup of Hedge-mustard, Scurvigrafs, of each three ounces; Cinamon-water two ounces; mix it.

Let the sick lying in bed, meanly covered take often in a day five or six spoonfulls of this decoction, whereby a light sweat may break forth to ease them.

By the frequent use of these medicines, the Animal spirits will not onely be freed from their drowsiness, but even the Narcotick force bred in the Body (either in the length of time, or received in from without) may be corrected, and by degrees gently educ'd by insensible transpiration: So that at length, these dangerous distempers may happily be overcome.

Let Clysters, and Suppositories be often administred, as need requires.

Those prescrib'd in page 17, 18. in the Cure of the Palsie and Apoplexy, are very effectual here.

If strength and age permit, let a vein be opened in either Arm or Foot, as you shall see cause; for generally Authours consent to it, besides *Experientia docet*.

Let

Let Ventoses with (or without) Scarification be applied to the shoulders and hinder part of the Neck.

And let Sternutatories be often snuft up into the Nostrils, to provoke sneezing.

*Sneezing
Powder.*

Take the Roots of Pellitory of *Spain*, white Hellebor, of each half a drachm; Castor, Nutmegs, white Pepper, of each twenty grains; Flowers of Lillies of the Valley one drachm; beat them into a fine Powder.

If the Stomach be foul, and the sick incline to vomit, give this or the like.

Vomit.

Take the decoction of Horse-radish, two ounces; the infusion of *crocus metallorum*, Oxymel of Squills, of each half an ounce; Oil of sweet Almonds newly drawn, two drachms; mix it, and give it in the Morning.

But if the sick had rather take Pills or Portions, let the following serve.

*Purging
Pills.*

Take *Extract. Rudii, pil. fætidæ, ex duobus* of each half a drachm; Powder of Castor twenty grains; Oil of Cloves six drops, with Syrup of Stœchas, make it into Pills, for three doses.

You may give them twice a week in the Morning fasting.

*Purging
Infusion.*

This purging Infusion is also very effectual.

Take of the best Senna, Rhubarb, *Polypodium*, of each half an ounce; Mechoacan, Agarick,

Agarick, Turkey-Turbith, of each three drachms; Ginger, Anise-feed, of each two drachms; let them be bruised and infused in eight ounces of Ale very hot, for the space of a Night, then strain it, and add the best *Manna*; Syrup of Roses solutive of each one ounce; Spirit of Castor twenty drops; mix it for two doses.

Let the affected parts, as the Head, &c. be bathed with this or the like fomentation.

Take the Roots of Master-wort, Angelica, Zedoary, of each three ounces; Bay-berries, Juniper-berries, of each four ounces; Sage, Marjoram, Rue, Rose-mary, Betony, Flowers of Lavender, Melilot, Chamomel, of each two handfulls; let them be all cleansed, bruised and boiled in White-wine-vineger, and Fountain-water, of each three quarts, till half of it be boiled away.

After bathing anoint the hinder part of the Head with this Oil.

Take of Oil of Rue, Marjoram, of each half an ounce; Oil of Amber, Rose-mary and Bricks, of each two drachms; Oil of Bays, *Euphorbium*, Castor, of each six drachms; mix them.

For Revulsion, let the soles of the feet be washed with Salt and *Acet. Scillitic*. Vesicatories may also be applied to the Coronal Suture, and behind the Ears; or upon the Shoulders, Neck, Arms, Thighs, &c.

Avoid

Avoid all vaporous and phlegmatick Nourishment.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Phrensie, and Madness.

Phrenitis. **T**HE Phrensie is called in Greek *φρενίτις*, & *φρενίσις*, *ex φρεν mens; quia mentis morbus.*

The Phrensie is an inflammation of the Brain and Meninges, both the *dura* and *pia mater*; causing an acute continual Fever, which remains from the first moment of its invasion, to the last of its duration, thence a *delirium*, and raving Madness, together with great trouble of mind, afflicts the sick in a superlative manner.

Mania. Madness is called in Greek *μανία*, *α μανίωμαι*, *insanio*, 'tis called in Latin *amentia*, *furor*, *insania*.

It is a furious alienation of the mind, or a vehement *delirium* without a Fever; in which it differs from the Phrensie.

I know there are not wanting the works of great Physicians, who have written very learnedly of these diseases; but omitting the opinion of others; I shall in a few words, relate

relate that which seems true to me, to be the cause of these furious distempers.

None who are ingenious Searchers of Truth ; and have weigh'd accurately (with an attentive mind) both the fabrick and ways, or Vessels of the containing Body, and the natural motion of the Bloud, and other humours ; will deny, that almost innumerable diseases do arise from the vitious effervescency of over fat Choler, the too tart Pancreat juice, and over viscous Phlegm, flowing together in the small guts ; for by this vitiated mingling not onely hurtfull humours are produc'd, but often wind, and halituous Vapours, causing much harm to humane Bodies.

Wherefore I judge, when Phlegm is very viscous, or otherwise vitious, and the juice of the Pancreas too tart and harsh ; sharp halituous Vapours are thence produc'd, elevated from the small guts, because of a vitious effervescency there rais'd ; and thence continually ascending to the Head ; and with the spirituous Bloud, circulate into the Ventricles of the Brain, by which the Animal spirits are vitiated, and troublesomely mov'd, and hindred of natural rest and tranquillity ; therefore 'tis no wonder that the Empty mind of the sick is thereby disturb'd, and at length the sick become distracted and mad.

But

But if Choler be predominant, these vapours become very cholerick and acrimonious; which rarifies the Bloud by degrees more and more; so that at length the heat and burning Fever in the Heart, (and thence through the whole Body) is encreased by Choler successively over-ruling, which causeth the Phrensie.

No marvel then if heat, pain, and inflammation, and pulsation of the Head do chiefly vex the sick in this grievous distemper; seeing no part of the Body hath so many Arteries, and receives so much Bloud as the Head; wherefore the pulsation of the Temples is felt more troublesome than elsewhere, because of the remarkable windings of the Brain, through which great Arteries are carried; from whence great watchings, and at length raving Madness do molest the sick.

But there still remains something requisite to be set down, as the chief cause of these, and most other distempers, which ought not to be despis'd (either by Jew or Gentile) seeing we have the word of God for it; and that is the crying sins of Mankind continually drawing God's Judgments on them.

You may reade the 28th. Chapter of *Deuteronomie*, where the Prophet *Moses* enumerates the many diseases, with which God would

would smite the Children of *Israel*, for the wickedness of their doings, whereby they had forsaken him.

And not onely they, but we also shall be subject to these grievous distempers, and eternal destruction also, if we do not turn to the Lord by unfeigned repentance, *except ye repent, ye shall all likewise perish*, saith our blessed Saviour Jesus Christ in *Luke 13. 3.* Verse.

Those poor creatures who have been miserably afflicted with these furious diseases, and happily recovered; can tell by sad experience, that they have been many times hurried almost to desperation, by the cunning wiles and temptations of Satan; which hath prevail'd on many to lay violent hands on themselves; from which let us pray, *libera nos Domine.*

1. The Phrensie is a most acute and dangerous disease, insomuch that it ends most commonly in seven days; for in that time it either terminates by the recovery of the sick, or else they go over the threshold of the other world. Progr.

2. If the Phrenetical party hath a Crisis either by sweating, bleeding at the nose, or Hæmorrhoids, &c. or a tumour appear behind the Ears, there is hopes of recovery: but if the sick gnash with his teeth, and his Excrement and Urine be whitish, and no Crisis appear,

'tis

'tis mortal ; so likewise is it very pernicious, if it turn either to the Lethargy, or Convulsion.

In the *Mania* or Madness, if the stomach or appetite decay, and the sick be very fearfull, and hath continued long, it is most difficult to cure : but if the party be merrily conceited, it is not so dangerous.

3. If the swelling of the Veins in the Legs, called *Varices*, or the Hæmorrhoids, or *Menses*, or any other flux of blood should happen to them that are mad or frantick, there may be hopes of recovery.

Cure.

And that we may pass on to the cure of these lamentable diseases : let the following Golden precept be speedily observ'd.

Principiis obsta, sero medicina paratur : Cum mala per longas invaluere moras. For unless speedy help be procur'd for the *Phrensie*, it killeth the party in a short time : and likewise *Mania* or Madness becomes oft (by degrees) so stubborn, and rebellious, that it can be cur'd onely late or never.

Therefore the friends of the sick are to be admonish'd to consult with the honest Physician, so soon as the signs begin to be manifest ; for when it hath taken deep root, it is hard to be eradicated, or overcome, unless by an Herculean labour.

Clyster.

First therefore let a Clyster be administred. Take of Mallows, Marsh-mallows, Violets, Lettice, Beets, Pellitory of the wall, Me-

Mercury, Centaury, Water-lillies, of each one handfull. Damask Prunes twenty. Boil them in a quart of Barley-water till half be consumed, then strain it, and add Electuary Lenitive, Syrup of Violets, Roses Solutive, of each one ounce; Oil of Violets two ounces; Common Salt one drachm. Mix it for a Clyster.

After the Operation of it, you may open a Vein in the Arm.

But if *Menses*, or the Hæmorrhoids be suppressed, then open the Saphena, in either Foot; and let the orifice be made pretty large, because thereby sharp and fatty vapours may more plenteously be effus'd together with the blood: whereby the troublesome heat will be the better temper'd, and not a little diminish'd.

Neither will it suffice to let blood once, but this evacuation is oft to be iterated, till (by the diminish'd feverish heat) it appears that the cause is remov'd or overcome.

But let Phlebotomy be warily done, where choler abounds, because *sanguis est frænum Bilis*: wherefore I advise the young Practitioner to take away but little blood at a time, which may be done so often as need requires, either by an instrument, or leeches to the Hæmorrhoids.

Ventoses with scarification, may be applied to the shoulders, also Vesicatories to the armes, thighs, & *inter scapulas, in extremis morbis, extrema sunt adhibenda remedia.*

Choler over plenteous in the body, may be safely diminisht by a mild chologogue; for example.

Julep.

Take of Dandelion, Succory, Sorrel, of each two handfulls; Tamarind-fruit two ounces. Boil them in a quart of Barley-water till half be consumed; Strain it, and add the waters of Cinamon, and Fennel of each one ounce; The best Manna, Syrup of Succory with Rhubarb, of each three ounces; Spirit of Niter twenty drops. Let the sick take oft a draught of this Julep, till the body be made soluble; but if there be a strong constitution of body, I refer you to those excellent Medicines prescribed in page 8.9. of this book, which evacuates choler more powerfully by stool.

But where the Stomach is full and nauseous, let a vomit be administred without delay; and here I prefer Antimonials before all o-thers, both because they do most happily empty any humours promiscuously, and because they are most friendly to humane nature, bringing all the humours by degrees (after a peculiar manner) to a most laudable state.

And because in this distemper, the sick is always attended with a greivous and furious raging; let those things be given which will not onely promote sleep, but powerfully temper the sharp cholerick humours.

To this end I commend any fixt Minerall,

Sulph.

Sulphur of Vitriol or Antimony, which will temper the Acrimony of choler, and free the bloud from fuch matter perhaps before all others. But where these choice Medicines are not to be had, *Opium* well prepared will conduce beyond any commonly known Medicine; which may be used both Internally and Externally.

This Cordial *Opiat* is of great virtue.

Take the Waters of Sorrel, Lettice, Penny-royal, Fennel, of each two ounces; Cinnamon water, Syrups of red and white Poppies, of each one ounce; *Laudanum* ten grains; Tartar vitriolated half a drachm; Oil of Vitriol ten drops; mix it, and give two spoonfulls of it often, whereby the body may the sooner be reduc'd to sleep, and the mind to tranquillity.

The following *Epitheme*, and Linament may be used outwardly to give ease, and promote sleep.

Take the Waters of Betony, red Roses, of each two ounces; Vinegars of Roses, and Marygolds, of each half an ounce; *Opium* twenty grains. Mix it.

Let Linen cloaths be dipt in it being warm, and applied to the Forehead, and region of the Temples; and as often as the cloaths are dry, moisten them with the same, till pain be diminish'd, and sleep follow.

Take Populion half an ounce; *Opium* dissolved
E 2 *Linament.*

solv'd in Oil of Poppies half a drachm ; mix it for a Linament ; wherewith anoint each region of the Temples, and spread some of it on brown Paper and apply it.

Dieta.

Let the diet be very thin and cooling : Avoid hot spices, Wine, and other strong Liquours, and let the common drink be Barley-water with Syrup of Limmons.

Pigeons cut asunder, and applied to the Soles of the Feet, do many times avail, by drawing down hot Vapours and Fumes from the Head.

By this you may know how to cure not onely Phrensies, but all ravings and watchings, which are ingendred by Fevers ; for it will not be very hard from what is aforesaid, to frame or join such helps as may conduce to the same.

In *mania* or madness ; when Phlegm is over viscus, and the Juice of the *Pancreas* too tart and harsh, exceeding, and overruling the other humours in the Body ; whereby sharp halituous Vapours are continually rais'd, disturbing the sick both in Body and Mind : Speedy care must be taken to correct and educe the vitiated humours, to amend and discuss the hurtfull flatuous Vapours, and also to compose the immoderate passions of the mind.

Volatile Salts and Aromatick Oils do not onely correct viscus and acid Phlegm, but
four

four and tart Vapours also; for they have power to cut and dissolve that which is viscus, to temper and correct that which is four and tart, and to discuss and dissipate what is vaporous and windy.

The following Julep, whose power is singular and stupendious, may be deservedly preferr'd before many others.

Take the Waters of Parsley, Fennel, Mint, Penny-royal, Scurvigrafs, of each two ounces; the Waters of Treacle and Cinamon, of each half an ounce; Syrups of Fennel, Poppies, and the five opening Roots, of each one ounce; *Laudanum opiat.* twenty grains; Spirits of Salt Armoniack and Niter, of each twenty drops; Oils of Annise-seed and Cloves, of each ten drops; mix them. *Julep.*

By the frequent use of this Julep, or such like; the hurtfull humours and vapours will not onely be corrected, and amended; but a new Production of them will be hindred, and both Body and Mind reduc'd to a more quiet frame.

These Pills will be also usefull to correct more, and mildly educe, or expell the vitious humours.

Take of *Galbanum* prepar'd with Vinegar of Squills; Powders of Mastick, Troches Alhandal, Rozin of Scammony, and Jallop, of each one drachm; Powders of Castor, Mirrh and Saffron, of each twenty grains; *Purging Pills.*

Oils of Cloves, Harts-horn, Balsom of Sulphur with Oil of Anise-feed, Spirit of Salt Armoniack, of each ten drops; beat them all into a Mass for Pills, of which you may give half a drachm at a time, in the Morning fasting.

It will be convenient to take these Pills twice a week, for the better vanquishing the rebellious and redoubl'd humours.

Also let Antimonial vomits (rightly prepar'd) be sometimes administred, they being endued with an universal force of cleansing Man's body from all harm and impurity.

By these forms any judicious Practitioner, may easily invent other prescriptions in some things to be varied, as the disease requires.

Thus having premis'd a rational, and dogmatical cure of these grievous diseases, confirm'd by experience; I think it my duty (once for all) to admonish the honest Physician, and others who attend the sick; to be often seeking the Lord for a Blessing on the means.

And if all refuge fails, to take the Advice of the Apostle *James* in the 5th. Chapter and 14, and 15. verses.

This was the Custome of the Primitive Christians without doubt, and I wish it were more in use amongst us at this day; for God

is

is as able to heal the sick now, as he was then, for he is the same yesterday, and to day and for ever.

I thank God, I have had some experience of his great goodness and mercy, extended towards some of his poor Creatures, by means of this ordinance, when all other help of medicine, &c. have prov'd unsuccessfull, for which *uni Deo & trino Gloria.*

CHAP. VII.

Of CATARRHS.

THE Catarrh is called in Greek *κατάρροϋς* *a κατ' ἔξω, fluo.*

It is called in Latin *distillatio*, because it is a defluxion of excrementitious and sharp Rheumatick humours from the Head, into most parts of the Body; invading not only all the conglobated, and conglomerated Glandules; by which the Circulation of *Lympha* and Spittle are deprav'd: But also the Nerves, which causeth intense or vehement pains, and inflammations in the parts ill affected, which is most commonly attended with a Symptomatical Fever, especially if the Rheum be thin and sharp, and do flow very violently.

And seeing this distemper is not enough explain'd in Authours, either ancient or modern; I therefore (God prospering my in-deavours) will bestow some pains in searching out, and proposing the true causes and effects of it; which I hope will induce other liberal and ingenious spirited Artists to a farther inquiry after the occult causes, not onely of these, but other obscure diseases daily occurring in practice; that so by little and little, many things in the Art of Physick, as yet most obscure and confus'd, may be illustrated, and most commodiously explain'd.

Experience confirms, that there are many kinds of Catarrhs; some are more thick, others more thin; some acid and salt, others more sweet; some Rheums are hot and sharp, flowing more violently, other cold and pituitous, flowing but slowly; hence it is, that some Catarrhs are attended with Fevers, and some without.

Cause.

The causes of Catarrhs are either external, or internal.

The external cause is from external sudden Cold, shutting the pores of the skin, hindring the discharge of sweaty Vapours by insensible Transpiration; for if the usual ports of the skin do deny passage to the sweat, it will in a little time condense, and thence become sour, by which the extreme
parts

parts are chilled, which doth manifest it self by a shivering ; as any one may experimentally observe after taking Cold.

These humours having not vent through the porous skin (which is absolutely necessary) by the habit of the Body ; they are conveyed to the Head (together with the *Lympha*) through the Lymphatick Vessels.

The internal cause arises from pituitous humours, gradually collected (besides Nature) in the conglobated Glandules, observable about the *Plexus Choroides* in the side Ventricles of the Brain, and elsewhere ; perhaps in the Tonsils, and all the rest of the small Glandules about the *trachæa Arteria* ; hence the *Lympha* becomes fourish salt, as is tasted in a *Coryza*.

Whence also we may probably conclude, what way soever the conglobated Glandules are hurt, that the *Lympha* declines from its natural State and Quality : And as its depravation is milder or sharper, more grievous, or lighter pains are thence bred ; of which we have many times an ocular demonstration in the flowing down of the Rheum through the Nostrils, which is oft so sharp, that it doth corrode the skin, and superficies of the face where it comes.

If it be in quantity moderate, it is conveyed to the infinite little salivary Ducts or Chane's, in the conglomerated Glandules,

dules, which open into the palate of the mouth, and there pour out the salival Liquour which they contain; which is either swallowed down into the Stomach, or else it is evacuated by spitting; and if Nature be overburthened by its plentifulness, it is also sent forth by the Nostrils.

But if the *Lympha* becomes more sharp, acid and salt in the Glandules before mention'd, it produceth first a stoppage, and burthensome Pain of the Head, which overcomes the retentive, and provokes the expulsive faculties; so that Nature being driven to most violent motions, doth extravasate, and intravasate the Rheumatick humours, *hic & ubique, a Capite ad Calcem*, through the most abstruse and inconspicuous passages of nature; so that it is the opinion of many learned Physicians, that a Catarrh is the original of many diseases incident to humane Bodies.

Progn.

1. Catarrhs happening to Children, are dangerous, especially if there appear plenty of humours, because they abound with moisture, and are full of excrements: Wherefore if a sudden defluxion happens to any of a tender age, desperate accidents may follow.

2. If the Rheum flow through the Nostrils, it is but gentle; if to the Throat 'tis worse, but if to the Lungs, worst of all; and if it becomes inveterate, it is very hardly cured.

Im

In the Cure of Catarrhs, the Head is chiefly to be taken care of, because the Rheum doth continually flow from it; therefore the Head ought to be corroborated, and the superfluous moisture thereof to be dried up: And likewise the part or parts (to which the Rheum flows) must be strengthened; the vitious quality of *Lympha*, and the other humours is to be corrected, and their plenty diminisht.

As Catarrhs consist of a different matter, and afflict divers parts, so they require diversity of medicines to cure them; for if the matter be thick and viscous, it must be attenuated and cut with Aromaticks, and afterward evacuated with Phlegmagogues: So likewise ferous and salt Catarrhs are to be temper'd with Oily things and Opiats, and the plenty of humours to be diminisht with Hydragogues; by which means the cure will be the sooner performed.

For viscous Catarrhs, accompanied with a Cough, I commend these following medicines.

Take the Waters of Hyssop, Mint, of each three ounces; Cinamon-water, Syrups of Fennel and red Poppies, of each one ounce and half; *Laudanum opiatum* six grains; Spirit of Salt Armoniack twenty drops; mix it, of which you may give three or four spoonfulls, every three hours.

By

By the frequent use of this Aromatick Julep, the viscous Phlegm will not onely be attenuated, but the over sharp Vapours will be discust, and the other humours temper'd.

After the Phlegmatick humours, &c. are thus prepared; it will be convenient to evacuate them downwards, by gentle purgation, with powerfull and effectual Phlegmagogues; and such are all mercurials, Colocynthis, Hermodactils, &c. to be taken chiefly in the form of Pills.

*Purging
Pills.*

Take *Extract. Rudii, pil. ex duobus*, of each one drachm; Mercury *dulcis* half a drachm; Oil of Cloves four drops; mix them for three Doses.

If the sick be averse to Pills, give this Potion.

*Purging
Potion.*

Take of Rhubarb, Agarick, Hermodactils, *Polypodium*, of each two drachms; Cinnamon, Cloves, of each one drachm; Sage, Rosemary, of each one handfull; sweet Fennel-seed, Juniper-berries, of each three drachms; bruise them and infuse them in Hyssop-water very hot, for the space of a Night, then strain it, and dissolve in it Syrup of Roses solutive, Electuary Diaphænicon, of each one ounce; mix it for a Potion.

Every night give the Patient a Pill of Sty-rax, or Hounds-tongue, to stay the Rheum, and to give ease and rest.

If the Catarrh be serous and hot, accom-
panied

panied with a Fever, and the sick have a costive Body, this Clyster will be effectual.

Take the common decoction for Clysters *Clyster.*
twelve ounces; *Diacatholicon*, Electuary of the Juice of Roses, of each six drachms; Oil of Chamomel two ounces; common Salt one drachm; mix it for a Clyster.

After the operation of it, you may open a Vein in either Arm, and take away eight or nine ounces of Bloud.

Then give this purging decoction.

Take Borage, Lettice, Purslain, Endive, *Purging
Decoction.*
Violets, of each one handfull; the four greater coldeeds, of each one drachm; Damask-prunes ten, Anise-feed, sweet Fennel-feed, of each two drachms; let them be bruised, and boiled in eight ounces of the pectoral decoction till half be consum'd; then strain it, and dissolve in it Syrup of Roses solutive, Electuary of the Juice of Roses, of each half an ounce; Spirit of Niter six drops; mix it for a Potion.

You may give this Potion twice in a week; which will both temper and gently evacuate the ferous and acid humours; and flatuous Vapours will also thereby be discust, and gently educ'd.

To cause rest, and thicken the Rheum, let one of these Pills be given every Night to bed-ward.

Take of *Laudanum* three grains; Powder *Pills opi-
of at.*

of *Olibanum*, Extract of Saffron, of each four grains, with a little pectoral Syrup, make it into four Pills.

Or you may give a Pill of *Styrax* every Night going to bed.

Tussis. When the Rheum flows down from the Head, into the *Trachæa arteria*, it stirs up a Coughing more or less, according to the sharpness and plenty of the humours, which are many ways vitiated; wherefore a Cough may be diversly cur'd, according to the diversity of its cause.

If the humours be over sour, they may be corrected with Pearl, Coral, Crabs-eyes, &c.

If the Rheum be too ferous and salt; the afore said *pil. Estyrace & Cynaglos. &c.* is excellent to temper it.

Becchical Troches, both white and black are not onely effectual, but gratefull to the sick in this coughing distemper.

If the humours be thick and viscus, they require fourish sweet things, and Aromaticks to attenuate and cut them.

The fore-mention'd Julep may be prescrib'd in this Case.

When the salt, sharp and ferous humours abounding, are corrected and temper'd; they may be diminish'd by Hydragogues.

The Hydragogue Electuary prescrib'd in page 18 is an effectual and gratefull medicine;

cine, which may be often us'd to the profit of the sick.

Children may take from one drachm to two, and Adults to half an ounce; of this excellent medicine once or twice a week.

As in other distempers always, so let me here admonish you in general, to be very diligent to attend to the medicines that most conduce to every particular Body, whereby they may be prefer'd before the rest; and as long as they profit, continue in the use thereof, that so the health of the sick may be every way promoted.

When much blood is voided by cough-
ing, there is great danger; wherefore we must hasten the more to its cure; lest the opportunity here (if any where urgent) be lost by delay; for the singular substance of the Lungs is easily infected and corrupted, but difficultly restor'd and repair'd; wherefore blood carried down from the Head into the Lungs, and raising a Cough, is to be stopt in its efflux.

*Sputum
Sanguinis.*

To this end let a Vein be opened, especially if a *Plethora* concur, or there be a notable heat of Blood, or a suppression of its wonted emptying.

After bleeding, let the over great heat be allay'd with sour and tart medicines; for example take the following Decoction.

Take

Decoction.

Take of Plantane, Housleek, Wood-sorrel, of each two handfulls; boil them in Barley-water one quart till half of it be boiled away, then strain it, and add Syrup of Jujubes three ounces; Salt *prunella* one drachm; Spirit of Niter twenty drops; mix it, and give four spoonfulls every three hours.

The flux of blood may be stopt by conglutinating medicines, which have power to close the Vessels, either broken by violent coughing, or corroded by the sharpness of the descending Rheum.

Astringent Julep.

Take the Waters of Comfry, Plantane, of each two ounces; Cinamon-water, distil'd Vinegar, of each one ounce; Syrup of Mirtles, Comfry, of each six drachms; Powder of Dragons-blood, red Coral prepar'd, of each one drachm; *Laudanum opiat.* six grains; Oil of Sulphur *per Campanam* twenty drops; mix it, and give three or four spoonfulls every two hours.

This choice medicine often taken, will cure the most ruptions of vessels, and will soon stop the flux of blood, beyond expectation; but I advise, that a sparing use of it should be continued for some time, after the disease is cur'd to sense, whereby the affected parts may be strengthened against the access of a new evil.

The blood distilling into the sharp Artery of the Lungs, will soon corrupt and turn into

to purulent matter, if not prevented by convenient medicines, which hath power to dissolve the coagulated blood, that it may be the easier expectorated.

The following form may be prefer'd.

Take the Waters of Hyssop, Fennel, of *Pectoral Julep* each two ounces; Cinamon-water, distill'd Vineger, of each half an ounce; Syrup of Hore-houud one ounce; Powder of Crabs-eyes, Antimony Diaphoretick, of each half a drachm; mix it, and give two or three spoonfulls every two hours.

If the Lungs be ulcerated, the Cure thereof will be promoted, if you add two or three drops of Balsam of Sulphur, with Oil of Anise-seed, to every spoonfull that you give of the aforefaid medicine, or in any pectoral Decoction; it must be given oft in a day; the better to finish the Cure.

In all Catarrhs if the Rheum have been long, you may use a Decoction of *China*, which will wonderfully temper the humours; or you may add *lign. sanctum*, *sassafras*, *sarsaparilla*, &c. which will dry up the Rheum by degrees.

The sharp humours being temper'd, and the matter of Rheum partly evacuated by Phlegmagogues, and Hydragogues, &c. outward means that dry up Rheum are likewise

wife to be used; as Caps for the Head, Perfumes, Errhines, Sternutatories, Masticatories, Apophlegmatisms, &c.

Ventoses with Scarification, may be also applied to the Neck and Shoulders; and Fontinels may be made in the Neck and Arm, for they have been often profitable in Catarrhs.

Also Vesicatories applied to the Coronall suture, and *inter scapulas* will avail much.

Let the Temples and parts adjacent be anointed with Oil of Amber, Oil of Nutmegs, &c. and let the Fume of Amber or Mastick be often drawn up into the Nostrils.

Also a Sternutatory (such as is prescrib'd in page 21. in the Cure of the Palsie) is very effectual to cause sneezing, twice or thrice in a day.

A Cap may be also quilted for the Head (of the following things) with Cotton-wool and red Sarcenet.

For a
quilted
Cap.

Take of sweet Marjoram, Betony, Baum, Bazil, Red-rose buds, of each half a handfull; the Berries of Mirtle and Juniper, the Seeds of Peony and white Poppy, of each one drachm; *Calamus aromaticus*, Nutmegs, Cloves, Frankincense, Mastick, *Styrax calamitis*, *Laudanum*, of each two drachms; let them be all beaten into a gross Powder, for a quilted Cap.

Also

Also this following Powder may be prepar'd, to fumigate the Head and Cloaths; morning and evening.

Take of *Olibanum*, *Styrax calamitis*, Amber, of each two drachms; red Roses, Coriander-seeds prepar'd, Mastick, Gum of Ivy, Cloves, Mirtle-berries, white Poppy-seeds, of each one drachm; let them be all beaten into a gross Powder.

*Powder to
fume the
Head, &c.*

Also this Masticator may be often used.

Take of Mustard-seed, Roots of Pellitory of Spain, Master-wort, Capers, Mastick, Amber, of each one drachm; let them be all beaten into a gross Powder, and tye up some of it in a Linen-rag, and chew it in the mouth every day before Dinner and Supper.

*Mastica-
tory.*

Or you may chew either Mastick, Amber, or the Root of Pellitory of Spain by it self, which will draw the ferous humours away by spitting.

Errhines may also be used; they are either moist or dry, the dry are made with Pepper, Betony, Rosemary, Stavesacre, &c.

The liquid are made with the Juices of Rosemary, Ivy, Beets, Mercury, sweet Marjoram, &c.

And it may here be noted, that when Rheum doth flow down to the Throat, Lungs, &c. then Errhines may be used; but when the humours flow to the Eyes, Nose, &c. then use Masticatories, for a Revulsion; Re-

vulsio enim est humoris fluentis attractio in partem contrariam.

Note.

The Spirit of Salt Armoniack, held to the Nose in a narrow mouth'd Glass, doth wonderfully conduce above all others, not onely to dissolve the viscous phlegmatick humours, obstructing the Glandules: But also temperates the acid Saltness of Catarrhs.

Plaisters may be also applied to the Head being first shaved, to dry up the Rheum, and strengthen the Brain.

This may serve for Example.

Plaster
for the
Head.

Take of the Plaisters *ad Herniam*, and Cephalick, Taccamahac, of each half an ounce; mix it, and spread it on leather, and apply it to the Head.

Let the Rheumatick live in a warm and dry Air, and use a drying Diet with moderation in eating, drinking, sleeping, and all other things.

Jejunet, vigilet, sitiat: qui Rheumata curat.

BOOK II.

CHAP. I.

Of Shortness of Breathing.

Shortness or Difficulty of Breathing, is called in Greek *ἄσθμα*, *ex ἄσπρω* *spiro*, *vel ἄζω*, *i.e. Asthma.*
afflo calidum ori.

It is a disease in which the *Bronchia* of the Lungs are so stuffed with viscous Phlegm, that the sick can hardly breathe, but with wheeving, blowing or puffing, and do make a great noise with snorting; in which the *Diaphragma*, and intercostal Muscles are violently moved.

If the Lungs onely are stuffed, it is without snorting, and is then called in Greek *δυσπνοία*, *ἀ δὲς ἀγρε*, *ἔ πνέω* *spiro*.

In this the conduits of the Lights are much stopped, causing hardness, or straitness of breath, and pursiness.

But if the Patient fetcheth breath with much difficulty, with the Neck stretched upright; it may then be called *ὀρθοπνοία*, *ab ὀρθός*, *rectus*, *ἔ πνέω*, *spiro*, *i.e. erecta cervice spirare.*

The cause of this disease, is the Juice of Cause. the *Pancreas* growing more sour by its obstruction, joined to viscous Phlegm in the small gut, by which it becomes more flatulent; and being stir'd up in its effervescency

with Choler, it riseth to the Thoracick passage, by the Lacteal Veins, and so to the Heart and Lungs, and filling the airy conduits thereof, and sticking there, it causeth a breathing with snorting.

The same humour is also carried to the Stomach, which causeth many four Belchings in this distemper; and if these flatuous humours become more sharp than viscous; so often as they come to the Lungs, they pierce into the sharp Artery, and do so provoke and molest it, that thereby the Lungs are compelled to cough, by which the Expiration of Air is deprav'd.

Progn.

If there be much moisture contain'd in the sharp Artery, it will be the easier expelled by the help of coughing, but if the *Trachea Arteria* be affected with driness, then nothing is spit out, though with great and much labour, but the universal Body is wearied in vain with endeavouring to cough; whence there is sometimes raised a vehement Pain both of the Head and Hypochondries, and other parts; yea sometimes a Rupture is bred by it, and the Urine and Excrements are thereby often involuntarily extruded.

2. If this disease be not speedily removed, it will prove chronical and hard to be cur'd, unless the Patient be young and of a strong constitution, for otherwise it will end in a Cachexie or Dropsie.

An

An *Asthma*, or wheeſing Anxiety may Cure.. happily be cured (in the beginning) by an Antimonial vomit, eſpecially in thoſe who do vomit eaſily, becauſe the Phlegmatick humours (which are contained in the ſharp Artery, &c.) are thereby immediately brought up; but if vomiting hurts the ſick, the humours may be evacuated downwards by gentle purgation, with powerfull and effectual Phlegmagogues, and Hydragogues, ſuch as is preſcrib'd in the Chapter of Catarrhs. page 56. 57.

If the Patient hath a coſtive Body, let carminative Clyſters be often adminiſtered; and if the Body be plethorick, let a vein be opened, either in the Foot, or apply Leeches to the Hæmorrhoid veins, which will much conduce to free the reſpiration.

Such medicines as have an expectorating quality, and have power to temper and diſcuſs the over ſharp vapours, may be often uſ'd in a little quantity.

The following Julep may be commended in this caſe.

Take of the pectoral Decoction half a pint, ^{Pectoral} Cinamon-water, Syrups of Hore-hound, ^{Julep.} Fennel, of each one ounce and half; Spirits of Salt Armoniack, Niter, of each twenty drops; *Laudanum opiatum* ten grains; Oil of *Sulphur per Campanam* ten drops, mix it.

Quercetanus his Syrup of Tobacco, is commended in this distemper.

Also Tobacco taken in a Pipe, or chewed in the mouth, draweth abundance of viscous Phlegm out of the Stomach and Lungs.

Many more medicines might be inserted, but I refer you to the Chapter of Catarrhs, where you may be thoroughly furnished.

CHAP. II.

Of the Pleurisie, and other Inflammations.

Pleuritis.

THE Pleurisie is called in Greek *πλευριτις*, *ex πλεύρα latus, quod tunicæ costos succingentis lateris dolor.*

It is also called in Latin *Pleuritis*, & *Inflammatio*; it being an Inflammation of the *Pleura*, and also of the intercostal Muscles, and other adjacent parts, as the *mediastinum*, *pericardium*, *diaphragma*, &c.

Signs.

It is attended with many Symptomes, as difficulty of breathing, shooting and pricking pain of the sides, which is the more exasperated by coughing, and is common in this distemper; the Patient hath also a continual acute Fever, which is most commonly symptomatical,

The

The Inflammation of the Lungs is called in Greek περιπνευμονία, *ex περι circum & πνέω* ^{Peripneu-} *pulmo, quod a πνέω spiro.* ^{monia.}

It is also called in Latin *Peripneumonia*, & *Peripneumonicus morbus*.

It is not different in the causes or signs from a Pleurisie.

The cause of the Pleurisie, and Peripneu- ^{Cause.} mony, and all other inflammations, is an obstruction of the Capillary vessels, (in the inflamed part) by glutinous Phlegm, carried together with the blood through them, and if a *Plethora* concur, the blood and humours will soon be stagnated, and become acrid and fervid, which preternaturally distends the vessels, by which circulation of the Blood is hindered, so that at length the vessels break, and the Blood is poured into the part affected; which there corrupts and increaseth the pain and inflammation, and consequently produceth a tumour, where the putrid blood and humours, (being by degrees corrupted,) are converted into purulent matter; for the blood being stagnated, or standing still in any part, the spirituous, and more volatile and subtle parts, that are wont to temper both the acid and salt parts, do afterward begin to vanish, whence both being made sharper, do more fiercely rise up one against another, and stir up an hot Effervescency, be-
cause

cause of the Oily parts of the blood present ; yea by degrees do so corrupt the blood, as it turns it into matter, which is different according to the variousness of the blood corrupted.

Progn.

1. The sooner the inflammation and Tumour comes to suppuration, the more easie will be the Cure.

2. If a Pleurisie follow an Inflammation of the Lungs, there may be hopes of recovery ; but if a Peripneumony follow a Pleurisie, or Quinzy, 'tis dangerous, and (for the most part) mortal.

3. If much matter be expectorated by coughing, and there still remain difficulty of breathing, 'tis an ill sign ; so likewise is it, if in coughing nothing be spit up.

4. If the Pleurisie, or Peripneumony remain above twelve days, an *Empiema* will inevitably ensue ; for the blood standing still, is by little and little collected in its vessels, and being peccant in a great excess, it distends them more and more, till at length they burst ; whence there happens an effusion of blood into the Cavity of the Breast, and being there collected, and corrupted into matter, it constitutes a suppuration called

Empiema. *Empiema.*

Cure.

To cure a Pleurisie, and any Inflammation, and Aposteme following, it is required, that

1. The obstruction of the vessels be opened, that

that the Circulation of the Bloud stopt, and standing still may be restor'd.

2. That the Bloud effus'd out of its vessels (if possible) may be discuss'd, before it turns to matter.

3. That if the Suppuration cannot be hindered, it must be promoted with all expedition, that the purulent matter collected, might be evacuated.

4. That the cleansing and consolidation of the Ulcer be speedily performed.

An obstruction of the vessels by viscous *Cure.* Phlegm, or bloud coagulated in them, may be cur'd by volatile Salts, prepar'd not onely of several parts of Animals, but also of Scorbutick plants, viz. Dandelion, Hedge-mustard, Scurvigrafs, Garden and Water-cresses, &c.

To these may be referred Crabs-eyes, the Jaws of a Pike, the Bone of a Harts-heart, Mummy, *Sperma cæti*, Antimony Diaphoretick, *Opium* prepar'd, &c. as also all fixt metallick and mineral Sulphurs.

These volatile medicines have an egregious Power of dissolving all things coagulated, and conglutinated in Man's body, and of reducing the same to their wonted fluidity, and do mildly promote sweat; hence it is that often by one such Diaphoretick given in season, both a Pleurisie, and Piripneumony, and also Inflammations of other parts

parts have been most happily and safely cured without Phlebotomy.

But where a *Plethora* concurs; after a stool hath been procur'd by a carminative Clyster, let a vein be opened, for thereby the blood standing still will be restor'd to its wonted Circulation; for some of the blood being let out, there will be a larger space made in the veins, for a more brisk and swift motion of the universal Mass of it.

After a sufficient quantity of blood is taken away, it will be profitable to give a Sudorifick.

This may serve for example.

Sudorifick. Take the pectoral Decoction four ounces; the Waters of Hyssop, Fennel, Parsley, Juice of Horse-dung clarified, distilled Vineger, of each three ounces; Treacle-water, Cinamon-water, Syrups of the five opening Roots, and of red and white Poppies, of each one ounce; Powder of Crabs-eyes, two drachms; Mummy, *Sperma cæti*, of each half a drachm; *Laudanum opiatum* ten grains; volatile Salt of Harts-horn half a drachm; Spirit of Salt Armoniack twenty drops; mix it.

Let the sick take often a spoonfull of this Julep, which is rich in volatile Salt, and powerfully corrects the acidity of the blood; by the help whereof the clottering of it will not onely be hindred, but its over thick parts incided, and by degrees attenuated;
and

and its over thin parts will be discust, and evacuated together with Sweat or insensible Transpiration: Its over sharp parts will be also temper'd, and the Pain asswaged, and at length wholly taken away; as also the obstruction it self will be loosened and dissolved; for when the volatile Salt of the Sudorifick comes to the place of obstruction, it attempts the matter obstructing be it what it will, and cuts, attenuates, loosens, and makes it fluid; whence it is farther driven forward together with it more easily.

The blood is also thereby more and more rarified, and becomes more fluid, and moveable; wherefore there needs no farther care for elaborated medicaments, and Methods.

Frustra fit per plura, quod fieri potest per pauciora.

As for Topical medicaments, or external applications, the following are excellent.

Take the roots of Briony, Smallage, Fennel, of each four ounces; the tops of Elder, Dwarf-elder, Hedge-mustard, Agrimony, Wormwood, Mint, Vervain, Flowers of Melilot, Chamomel, of each two handfuls; Cummin-seed, the Berries of Bays and Juniper, of each two ounces. Let them be all cleansed, bruised and boiled in two gallons of Rain-water till half of it be boiled away, then strain it for a Fomentation. *Fomentation.*

Let

Let the Inflammation or Tumor be well bathed with it, as hot as may be suffered, either with woollen cloaths, or soft sponges, fit to cover the part affected; after which let it be anointed with the following ointment.

Ointment. Take Ointments of Marsh-mallows, *Martiatum*, of each one ounce; Oils of Dill, Bays, Lillies, Poppies, Henbane, of each half an ounce; Oils of Amber, Turpentine, Bricks, of each one drachm; Camphire two drachms; mix it. Then let this plaister be spread on leather, or linen cloath, and applied.

Plaster. Take Yellow Wax four ounces, *Sperma cæti*, two ounces; *Galbanum* prepar'd with Vinegar, one ounce. Make it into a plaster according to art.

This egregious Plaster doth not onely preserve the bloud from coagulation in any part where it is applied; but Milk also from curdling in the Paps. But if it be not to be had, the following dissolving, and mollifying Cataplasme may be substituted.

Pultis. Take of Onions roasted under the ashes two ounces; Dwarf-elder, Hedge-mustard, Vervain, Elder, Chervil, Water-creffes, of each one handfull; Powders of *Album Græcum*, Lupines, a Swallows nest, Barley-meal, of each one ounce; Butter-milk as much as will make it into a Pultis.

Apply it meanly warm to the inflam'd part, for thereby the internal obstruction will be
the

the better opened ; but it must be renewed as often as it begins to dry.

When the bloud is effus'd into such places, out of which it cannot be well remov'd, or discust ; suppuration or the generation of matter, must be promoted, and hastned ; which may be done by emollient and ripening Medicines, as the roots and leaves of Mallows, Marsh-mallows, white Lillies, Onions, Squills, the powder of Fenugreek, and Flax-seed, the meal of Barley and Beans, the Marrow of all bones, and all kind of fats, and almost any Oil that is exprest of seeds, or kernels ; as also divers sorts of Gums, as *Galbanum*, *Liquid Styrax*, *Bdellium*, *Amoniacum*, and also Wax and Turpentine, &c.

Of these you may prepare Cataplasms, Oils, Unguents, Emplasters, &c. Which Judicious Physicians and Chyrurgions may doe as they see occasion.

But when there is much heat in the part inflam'd, beware of all unctuous things, and let your Fomentations and Cataplasms be made with Butter-milk, which doth egregiously temper heat, and hinder St. *Anthony's* fire from being easily join'd with the Inflammation.

The generation of matter being promoted, and the Tumor come to suppuration, let it be opened either with an Instrument or potential Cauterie, in the softest and lowest part

part of it ; and let the matter be evacuated by little and little , because otherwise the strength of the sick will not be a little prostrated, especially when there is much matter contained in the Aposteme ; wherefore let not the Tumor be pressed hard, which is familiar with many Chyrurgions, but often proves prejudicial to the Patient.

If the Orifice be too small, you may dilate it with a tent made of sponge dipt in Melilot pla ster, and afterward pressed ; but it is better to lay it open by incision, if it may conveniently be done ; after which you must forth-with proceed to cleanse and consolidate the Ulcer ; to which end several Medicines are wont to be applied, all which I neither blame nor carp at.

*Balsam
Sulphur.*

I have often considered (with admiration) the laudable effect of Balsam of Sulphur with Oil of Turpentine, &c. In this case incredible to many, if a little of it be mixt with a milder Balsam, and dropt in or applied to the Ulcer ; for shortly after, the generation of new Phlegm is so diminisht, that oft by the help of this one Balsam, I have in a few days perfectly cur'd notable Apostemes after Inflammations, bred both in the Breasts and elsewhere.

By this experiment not a little to be esteem'd I judge the cleansing and consolidation of Ulcers following Apostemes, to consist

first in the correction of acid and corroding matter, adhering to the Ulcer, and corrupting the blood, (at least in part that is apt to nourish it) and turning it into new matter; which may be corrected by the mention'd Balsam of Sulphur which is not onely Aromaticall, but abounds with a volatile oily Salt; by which the acid Spirit (which corrupts the blood into matter) is not onely dull'd, but so amended, that the blood flowing to it soon repairs the parts before consum'd, and finisheth the last consolidation.

What farther may be deduc'd from this experiment, to perfect Physick and Chyrurgery also in other cures, let both ingenious Physicians, and Chyrurgeons, weigh and judge.

If a Pleurisie, or Peripneumonie, be *ἐμπίμνα* not carefully cured, an *Empiema* (which is a collection of purulent matter in the cavity of the Breast) will unavoidably follow.

Wherefore if these Humors cannot be evacuated by expectoration, nor by sweating, pissing, or purging; the matter may be drawn out by a *Paracentesis made in the Breast. **Compunctio.*

The Apertion may be made four or five inches from the *Sternon*; not so near the upper as the lower rib, because under each rib there is an Intercoastal Vein, Arterie and Nerve. *Caution*

I do not approve of the old way of performing this operation, *viz.* After the Orifice is made, to put in a Perforated Pipe of Gold, Silver, or Lead, and there to remain till the matter be all discharged.

There is now a safer and surer way wherein is not onely avoided many difficulties and dangers, but 'tis also done with less trouble and pain to the Patient.

The Instrument must be made of Steel, sharp at the point like a Lancet, and hollow like a quill, with holes in several places towards the point, the better to evacuate the matter.

When the quantity (which you intend) is discharged, draw out the Instrument, and put a little pledget of dry lint on the Orifice, and upon it a sticking plaster; the next day (according to the strength of the sick) repeat it, either in the first place, or make a new Apertion. Thus you may doe every day, till the matter be all discharged.

By this Instrument may a *Hydrocele* be also discharged, and likewise the Dropsie of the Breast and *Abdomen*.

They that desire more directions in this Operation, may peruse *Hieronimus Fabricius ab aqua pendente, in Libro de Operationibus Chirurgicis.*

CHAP. III.

C H A P. III.

Of the consumption or Phthisick, and an Hectick Fever.

THE Consumption is called in Greek *φθίσις, ex φθίω, Tabesco*, because in this disease the sick doth consume or waste away.

It is called in Latin *Tabes*, which is a general name for all Consumptions, whether it be *Atrophia, Cachexia, or Phthisis*; but it may most properly be taken for an Extenuation of the whole body, caused by an Ulcer of the Lungs. *Tabes.*

The purulent matter of the Ulcer circulating with the blood, doth infect, and by degrees corrupt the whole mass of it, which makes it unfit for nourishment; hence it is that all the parts of the body do waste and consume.

The causes are many, sometimes purulent matter may be communicated to the Lungs, from the Plurisie or *Empiema*, inflaming and corrupting them, which causeth an Ulcer. *Causes.*

Sometimes a salt and sharp Rheum flowing down from the Head to the *Trachea Arteria*, which doth not onely cause a vehement Coughing, but doth corrode the Lungs, being naturally tender; Hence an Ulcer will be caused.

Also many times *Pustules*, or *Tubercles*, are generated in the Lungs, and coming to suppuration, they break; and the matter flowing to the *Bronchia*, it may be spit up, if the Patient have strength; but oft times an Ulcer remaineth, which causeth a Consumption.

These causes depend sometimes on Choler, sometimes on the juice of the *Pancreas*, sometimes on Spittle, sometimes on Chyle, sometimes on *Lympha* any way Vitiated, by which the mass of blood (in time) becomes also corrupted.

When the Lungs decline from their Natural consistency, they Will soon become hard and tumorous, and so by degrees they will be corrupted, and ulcerated; and the matter of the Ulcer corrupting, and makeing the mass of blood glutinous, in circulating with it, doth so weaken and corrupt all the parts of the body, that they become unfit to perfect natural nourishment; and therefore of necessity the universal body must consume and pine away; sometimes it is caused by an obstruction of the lacteal veins, which hindreth the natural passage of the *Chylus*.

Authours mention many more causes of Consumptions; as *Gonorrhæa*, Nocturnal Pollutions, want of Nourishment, &c.

Signs.

The signs of a Consumption begun, are a great defluxion of Rheum into the sharp Artery,

tery, causing a violent Cough, by which the Lungs are exasperated, and there follows a Hectick Fever, sometimes putrid, from the purulent matter flowing into the Veins.

To know whether the Lungs be ulcerated, let the Patient spit into water; if it sinks it is matter, which is an infallible sign of an Ulcer; for Phlegm always swims in water.

When the Ulcer is confirm'd, there is difficult breathing, and wasting of the whole body; the spittle is thick, and of various colours.

If the Ulcer of the Lungs, and Consump- *Progn.*
tion hath not been long, and the strength of the sick remains, there may be hopes of recovery; *¶ e contra.*

The Hectick Fever is called in Greek *Febris*
ἐκ τῶν στερεῶν, i. e. *ab habitu; quod in habitu* *Hectica*
corporis, vel in partibus solidis consistit.

It is an unnatural heat which hath seized upon the solid parts, and wasteth the moisture of them.

The heat in an Hectick Fever is but little, and therefore rarely troublesome to the sick, except one or two hours after meat; at which time the heat is a little sharpened and increased, which may be known by an over frequent though weak Pulse; but it soon returns again to its former equality.

But here it will not be amiss to shew you that there is a threefold moisture in the body,

viz. bloud in the Veins and Arteries, a dewy substance in every part, and also a glutinous moisture; which doth not onely nourish, but moistneth it, and keepeth the substance of each part together.

Signs.

In the beginning when the moisture begins to fail, the Hectick Fever is not easily discerned because there is still sufficient moisture to entertain the natural heat; but if (by the long continuance of the Hectick Fever) the radical moisture of the solid parts begins to consume, it may then be easily known, for there follows a continual and lingring leanness of the whole body; which being reduc'd to its extremity, may be call'd in Greek *μαρσμόςδης πυρετός*, and in English an extenuating Fever.

The Latin Authours call it *Marcor*, which signifies Corruption or Rottenness. It is an immoderate dryness, and Consumption of the whole body, by reason of the defect of the substantial humidity.

*Liber 12.
de marc.
cap. 4.*

There are two degrees of it according to *Galen*, the one is, when this extenuation of the body is *in fieri*, in consuming; the other is when it is *in facto esse*, or consummate; in which the body is reduc'd to such leanness, that it seemeth to be nothing else but a walking *Skeleton*.

Causes.

The causes of an Hectick Fever, are External or Internal.

The

The External causes are all that may occasion any of the other Fevers, for oft times Hectick Fevers are observ'd to follow other diseases, and especially Fevers of one day, proceeding from a great error in Diet, and also from continual, and intermitting Fevers, when they are very vehement; but most frequently from Inflammations of the Bowels, especially of the Lungs, for when an Ulcer follows, then the whole mass of blood is infected by matter, and gets a singular glutinousness; which being communicated to the other humours, spoils them with the same fault, and renders them unfit to perform the natural Functions rightly.

Sometimes Hectick Fevers are observ'd to arise immediately from excess of the nonnatural things, as most vehement anger, too much watchings, immoderate sorrow, continued labour, want of food, &c.

The Internal cause is, the over viscoseness of the blood and humours, because of which not onely the appetite of all food is diminished, and at length dejected, but the nourishment of all the parts of the body is daily decreas'd; for when there is loathing of food, then fermentation, separation of usefull from unusefull parts, sanguification, generation of the Animal Spirits, &c. is hindered and destroyed; whence the toughness, and sluggishness of Choler, Spittle, the juice of the

Pancreas, and *Lympha*, is dayly augmented, and the evil becomes by degrees greater, and at length incurable.

Progn.

If you perceive that there is so much of the radical moisture remaining, as is able to cherish the natural heat, which you may discern, if the colour of the body be fresh, if the figure be decent, if the proportion of the parts be according to nature, and the sick can (in some good measure) perform all actions, you may conceive some hopes of recovery.

But if the Body be extenuated, almost like a *Skeleton*, viz. when the body seemeth to be nothing else but Skin and Bone, (as the vulgar proverb is) acquaint the sick with the danger, least Death seize upon them unprepared.

Nevertheless, if the sick implore your aid of Christian Charity, withdraw not what comfort you are able to procure unto them.

Cure.

The Cure of a Consumption, and Hectick Fever, will differ not a little, according to the diversity of causes producing them.

When an Hectick Fever comes with, or succeeds Fevers with or without fits, then upon their account, the cure may be varied according to the divers harm of the humours, differently peccant.

If a Consumption, or Hectick Fever, be caused by purulent matter from an Ulcer of
the

the Lungs, &c. then you must endeavour to free the bloud and humours from matter, which may be done by any Antimonial medicines rightly prepared, perhaps before all others; whether they be Diaphoreticks, Purgers, or Vomitters, as experience doth manifest; for it hath been observ'd, (even in a Phthisick, and an inveterate great Ulcer of the Lungs) to bring away a good quantity of matter, by Stool and Urine, so that then for many days, no matter was cast forth by a Cough.

Among common things, all Vulnerary plants are good used in Decoctions. Let this or one like it, be a form of a Decoction in this case.

Take the Roots of Plantain, Comfrey, Round-birthwort, Liquorish, of each two ounces; Fennel, Scabious, Plantain, of each two handfulls; Figs, Raisons of the sun stoned, of each four ounces; let them be all cleansed, bruised and boiled in three quarts of Barley-water till a third part be boiled away; then strain it, and add Syrups of Hore-hound, and Hyssop, of each two ounces; *Laudanum opiatum* ten grains. Mix it. Let the sick drink two ounces of this Decoction oft in a day; and if you add one or two drops of Balsam of Sulphur with Oil of Anise-seed to every draught, it will be the more effectual. The Balsam prepared of the truly
Sul-

Sulphureous and inflameable Flowers of Antimony, is most excellent in this distemper, if it may be had, which may be taken as the Balsam of Sulphur.

Also those medicines may be used which mildly amend and correct the viscosities, and glutinousness of all the humours; for which I commend all mild Aromatics, and Oily Volatile Salts, as that cut and alter every viscous humour, and reduce it into its natural state.

Those medicines are to be selected as do most conduce to, and agree with the constitution of every sick person.

Vitriolated Tartar is an excellent medicine, which will agree with all constitutions, and may be taken from ten to twenty grains (every other morning) in a little warm Broth.

Also the following medicine is very effectual.

Powder.

Take the Powder of Cream of Tartar, and Tartar Vitriolated, of each half a drachm; Volatile Salt of Harts-horn, Salt of Amber, of each ten grains. Mix it for two doses, which may be taken in Chicken Broth, in the morning.

These choice medicines will conduce much to cleanse the blood and humours from all purulent matter, if there be any hopes of the Patient's recovery.

All Effusions of Blood, Seed and Milk,
are

are to be shun'd, except the wonted emptyings, which are natural and serve the individual.

Let the motions of the Mind be moderate, and the exercise of the Body be gentle, and let sleep and watchings keep a mediocrity.

Appoint a moistning and nourishing Diet, which is of easie fermentation, as Broth, and Jellies of young Creatures, and Milk of Goats, Sheep and Cows, and chiefly of wholesome Women.

A Panado made with the Broth of a Chicken, the Crums of White-bread, and the Yelk of a new laid Egg, may sometimes be given the sick for a change.

Let cooling Herbs be boiled in the Broth, and Jellies; adding other ingredients that are cooling, moistning and cordial, both to strengthen Nature, and revive the Spirits.

Let the sick drink Barley-water, made pleasant with some Pectoral Syrup; and if they have been accustomed to drink Wine, let it be well diluted with water.

As for Fruit, Apples are much commended, especially Pippins, and Permaines, which will much refresh the sick. If the Patient be constive, you may sometimes administer a Clyster of Milk and the yelk of an Egg.

The worst symptome that can attend these diseases, is a Loosness; if it so happen, give Goats or Cows milk, wherein steel hath been quench-

quenched, and Rice boiled in it, adding a little Powder of Cinamon, and let the sick eat commonly of it.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Palpitation of the Heart.

THIS Disease is called in Greek καρδίας παλμός, and in Latin, *palpitatio Cordis*, ἀπὸ τοῦ πάλλειν, *quod leviter ac frequenter commovet*; because there is an over frequent Pulsation or leaping of Bloud in the Heart, &c.

It is a Convulsive motion of the Heart, with a vehement *Systole*, and *Diastole* of it; which sometimes hath been so inordinate, that the Pulsation hath not been onely seen, but heard at a notable distance; yea sometimes it hath been so great, that the adjacent Ribs in young and tender people (who have been afflicted with this distemper) hath been dislocated, and the *Aorta* or great Artery, hath been much dilated. See *Fernelius* lib. 5. cap. 12. pag. 292.

Cause.

This deprav'd motion, or Palpitation of the Heart, is for the most part caused from sharp, viscous and flatuous humours, frequently arising out of the small Guts, and trans-

transmitted to the ventricles of the Heart, and adhereth to them, by which the Heart is provoked to a vehement and unequal contraction of it self, without intermission.

These humours are mov'd and driven forward, either by their vitious effervescency; or else they are stirr'd up by violent motion or exercise of the Body, especially in the quick ascending of a steep hill; and sometimes they are constrain'd, or urg'd by grievous Passions of the mind.

Sometimes there have been observ'd fleshy Tumours, and Cartilaginous excrescencies in the Substance of the Heart, when dissected; and those poor Creatures when living were never free from a vehement Palpitation.

Also Worms have been found in the *Pericardium*, of some that have been dissected after death; which without doubt caused a deprav'd motion, or pulsation of the Heart when living.

That which is caused by fleshy Tumours, *Progn.* Cartilaginous excrescencies, Worms, or any other extraneous thing in the *Pericardium*, or substance of the Heart, is incurable.

But the Palpitation of the Heart which is caused by acrimonious, flatuous and viscous humours may be cured.

Those medicines must be administred, *Cure.*
that

that cut, and discuss, and temper an acid Acrimony.

The following Julep may serve for an example.

Julep.

Take the Waters of Parsley, Fennel, of each three ounces; Tincture of Cinamon, Syrup of Mint, of each two ounces; Chymical Oil of Mace ten drops; Spirit of Salt Armoniack twenty drops; *Laudanum opiat.* ten grains; mix it, let the sick take a spoonfull of it every quarter of an hour, till they get some ease.

If the distemper hath persever'd long; the peccant humours must be emptied out by purging; and to educe them, I prefer before all others, Pills to be made of Gums, seeing they loosen the glutinous humours, and dispose them to be easier carried out.

For example.

*Purging
Pills.*

Take of *Galbanum* prepar'd with Vinegar half an ounce; Powder of Scammony prepar'd, Troches Alhandal, of each two drachms; Oil of Carraway twenty drops; make it into a Mass for Pills.

Take five or six of these Pills in the Morning fasting, twice a week.

They who abhor Pills, may use an Aromatick and purging Decoction.

The following though bitter is very efficacious.

Take

Take the five opening Roots, of each one ounce; Roots of *Angelica*, Berries of Bay and Juniper, of each half an ounce; the best Senna, Orange-peel, Carraway-feed, *Coloquintida*, of each one drachm; *Guaiacum* four ounces; let them be cleansed, bruised and boiled in two quarts of Fountain-water till half of it be boiled away, then strain it, and add Syrup of Roses with Senna four ounces, Cinamon-water two ounces; mix it. Purging
Decoction.

Let the sick take four ounces of this bitter Decoction, every other Morning; which will by degrees diminish, and mildly educe the hurtfull humours by purging.

But seeing not onely the cause ought to be removed, but also the Symptomes asswag'd, by refreshing the Heart; you must administer cordial Medicines which have power to corroborate the Heart, and to cherish and strengthen nature.

The following Cordial may be preferred in this Case.

Take the Waters of Baum, Mint, Borage, Cinamon, of each three ounces; Syrups of Baum, red Poppies, of each two ounces; *Laudanum opiat.* Amber-greese, of each ten grains, mix it. Cordial
Julep.

Let the sick take two spoonfulls of this rich Cordial every three hours, which will wonderfully refresh, and delight the sensible Stomach, from whence the perfumed im-

impressions will soon be communicated to the whole Body; by which all the vital and animal Functions will be refreshingly cherished, and strengthened, and the Palpitation of the Heart eased and abated.

If the Patient hath a costive Body, let a carminative Clyster be sometimes administered, and if a *Plethora* concur, let a vein be opened, either with an Instrument in the Arm, or by Leeches applied to the Hæmorrhoids.

C H A P. V.

Of an universal Languishing, as also of Swounding and Syncope.

AN universal Languishing of the strength of all the parts and functions, is sometimes observ'd to remain after some disease preceding, not rightly cured; especially when the Infirmary hath been grievous, for then a weariness or defect of the Animal motion doth usually concur, together with a weak or little pulse, and dulness and debility of the internal and external senses; whereby the sick continues weak and more languishing (by certain intervalls) than is natural.

All

All the kinds of Swounings, may be divided (for methods sake) into two, *viz.* the lighter kind, and the most grievous.

The lighter kind of Swouning or fainting is called in Greek *λειποψυχία*, *vel* *λειποθυμία* in Latin *animæ defectio*, *ex* *ψυχῇ* *anima*, *ἔ* *λείπειν* *deficere*, because it is an Imbecility or Feebleness of the Heart and Courage.

The most grievous and singular kind of swouning, is called in Greek *συγκοπή*, *ex* *συγκό-* *Syncope.* *πτε* *concido*, to cut away; *quod præceps viri-* *um omnium lapsus.*

It is also called *ἀσφίξία*, *i. e.* *pulsus privatio*, because there is no pulse; neither indeed (presently in the fit) is there any Animal or voluntary motion or respiration to be observ'd, so that they are more like dead than living Creatures.

The signs of these fits approaching are *Signs.* yawnings, a Cardialgy, Anxiety or Compression of the Heart, griping and distension of the Belly, tinkling in the Ears, dimness before the Eyes, and a Giddiness; and at the approach of a Syncope, there are often Convulsive motions, with a cold and glutinous sweat, and paleness of all the parts of the Body.

The causes of these distempers are either *Causes.* external, or internal.

The external are many, as extreme weariness of the Body, exceeding passions of the
H mind,

mind, prolong'd hunger or thirst, ungrateful smells, the sight of any Person or thing that is envied, too great effusion of Blood, Seed or Milk, over great evacuation of the humours, by Vomit, Stool, Sweat, Urine, &c.

It may also be caused by the biting or stinging of any venomous Creature, and by any other vehement pain.

Sometimes it is produc'd by a great heat, either of the Sun, Fire, Bath or Fever.

Any of these Causes mention'd (being extreme) may so change, and diminish the natural effervescency, and rarefaction of the blood, that the Heart it self is not thereby enough expanded, and contracted: So that the vital blood cannot be sufficiently effus'd into the Arteries; and therefore the Pulse is felt less and more languishing, yea sometimes none.

The internal Cause is glutinousness encreased in the blood, and the other humours; and sometimes an encreased Acidity in the Juice of the *Pancreas*, *Lympha* and Spittle; by which the Circulation of the Blood and Humours becomes too slow; hence the Ventricles of the Heart are not enough dilated, which causeth the Pulse to be weaker than is natural, for the effervescency of the blood and humours being not potent enough, cannot provoke the Heart to contract it self, and therefore a Swouning or Syncope will inevitably ensue.

They

They who are much subject to a Swouning ^{Progn.} or Syncope, dye suddenly.

Those fits which are produc'd from some evident cause, as vehement passions of the mind, immoderate evacuations, &c. are less dangerous than those which come from an internal cause, as glutinousness of the blood and humours, &c. Which in a great measure hindreth its free Circulation through the Ventricles of the Heart, whereby there is a sudden and swift failing of the vital Spirits, and consequently of all strength.

To cure an universal languishing, as also a ^{Cure.} Swouning and Syncope; the phlegmatick, glutinous, and acid Humours must not onely be corrected, but when they abound, must be diminish'd and educ'd out of the Body.

Therefore to correct and amend the said humours abounding, both in the universal Body, and Blood; I will here set down some forms of select medicines, for the sake of young Physicians.

The following Decoction, is an efficacious Medicine.

Take the Roots of Elicampane, Galan- ^{Decoction.} gal, *Angelica*, *Calamus Aromaticus*, the five opening Roots, of each one ounce; Sage, Baum, Betony, sweet Marjoram, the Tops of Hore-hound, Centaury, Wormwood, the Flowers of Rosemary, *Stæchas*, Chamomel, Clove-gilliflowers, of each one handfull;

the Seeds of Anise, Sweet-fennel, Parsley, Cardamoms, Berries of Bays and Juniper, of each two drachms; Orange-peel, Cinamon, of each half an ounce; Nutmegs one drachm; let them be cleansed, bruised and infused in two quarts of Fountain-water for a night; then boil it gently till a third part be consumed; strain it, and add Syrup of Mugwort, *Stæchas*, tincture of Cinamon, of each two ounces; mix all together.

Two or three ounces of this Decoction may be taken at any time, twice in a day, either before or after meat, that so the power of the medicine may mildly mix and incorporate it self, not onely with the food, but with Spittle in the Stomach, and also with the threefold humour flowing together in the small Guts; and thence with the universal blood and humours in all the Veins and Arteries; whereby the desired amendment, and correcting of them will be performed, sooner, easier and more happily.

If any like a medicinal Wine better, they may infuse the aforesaid Ingredients in a sufficient quantity of White-wine, and drink it daily both at dinner and supper time.

These choice Medicines may be continued for some time; but when the sick is weary of them, you may use the same Ingredients in the form of a Powder, or Electuary, or make them into Troches, with Syrup of *Stæchas*, Mugwort, &c.

Or

Or you may make use of those compound Powders which are to be sold at the shops, viz. *Spec. Diamb. Diagalangæ, Dianthos*, &c. all or either of which may be used as aforesaid.

If any will be better pleas'd with Pills than other Forms, you may prescribe these, or some like them.

Take of *Galbanum* prepar'd with Vinegar ^{Purging Pills.} two scruples; Powder of Amber, Mastick, of each one scruple; Frankincense, Mirrh, Castor, of each ten grains; Vitriol of *Mars* prepar'd to whiteness, half a drachm; Chymical Oil of Mace, eight drops; beat them into a mass for Pills.

Let the Patient take four or five of these Pills in the morning fasting, or at night an hour after supper; whereby the viscous phlegmatick and acid humours will be potently corrected, and temper'd; which being done, the peccant humours may be effectually educ'd with these hydragogue Pills.

Take Gum, *Sagapenum* prepar'd with Vinegar half a drachm, Rosin of Jallap, *Gambogia*, of each one scruple; Oil of Juniper four drops; mix them into Pills. ^{Purging Pills.}

Four or five of these Pills may be administered at a time; or more or fewer, as the sick is more difficult or easie to be purg'd.

When a swooning Fit or Syncope is near approaching, give those things that will power-

fully concentrate the four flatuous vapours, and discuss the glutinous Phlegm.

The following Volatile, and Aromatick Cordial will conduce much to this purpose.

*Cordial
Julep.*

Take the Waters of Mint, Fennel, Betony, Scurvigrafs, Cinamon, of each one ounce; Syrups of Borage, Mint, of each six drachms; Tincture of Castor, Confection of Alkermes, of each two drachms; Salt of Amber one drachm; Spirit of Salt Armoniack twenty drops; *Laudanum opiat.* Amber-greese, of each six grains; mix it.

The sick may take two or three spoonfulls of this Cordial in time of the fit, and likewise both before and after, which will much repair both the Vital and Animal strength, which is wont not a little to languish in these fits.

None but they who have try'd, will be easily perswaded of the wonderfull efficacy of the aforesaid medicines; not onely in preventing, but in diminishing and soon curing Swounings and the Syncope.

When either of these fits urgeth, or is upon the party, you must use those outward things, which may stir up the external senses; as frictions of the external parts, shoutings in the Ears; also make a smoak with Amber, or Partridg Feathers at the nose, or hold the Spirit of Salt Armoniack, (in a narrow mouth'd glass) to the Nostrils. You may also

also wring the Fingers, and pull the Hair, &c.

If you have not a Cordial ready, give Cinamon, or Treacle water, or the *Apoplectick* or *Antepileptick* waters, or for want of them, Brandy, *Aqua vitæ* or strong Wine may serve.

CHAP VI.

Of Fevers in General.

A Fever is called in Greek *πυρετις*, à *πύρ*, *vel a feritate morbi*, that is from the fierceness of the disease.

It is called *febris* in latin à *fervore*, *quasi fervens*, because it is a hot distemper.

A Fever is a nonnatural heat, which may be so termed, because it is more than nature requires, for the continual management of her vital functions; for when nature is grieved, or over-burthned by any distemper, there is a struggling endeavour of nature herself to remove it, which causeth this non-natural heat.

It may be called the Prince of diseases, because it is the general door, through which most of humane mortals take their *exit* of this world.

The cause of the preternatural frequency of the pulse, is either a permanent and over rarefaction of the blood, or any sharp, four, or salt vapour carried to the Heart, corroding the internal substance of it; by which the *Archæus* or vital Airy spirit of the Heart is provoked to allarm all the faculties, and powers both vital and natural, that it may the more courageously resist its invading Enemy, so that the spirits are thereby much stirred up and inflamed; from whence proceedeth a Conflagration, or vitious Effervescency of the Blood and Humours throughout the whole Body.

Fevers are either continual, or intermitting.

A continual Fever is that which remains from the first moment of its invasion, to the last of its duration.

When a continual Fever is very mild, and remains but one day; it is called in Greek *ἐφήμερα*, *ex ὅτῃ ἐφήμερα dies*, *quod diem durans*.

It is called in Latin *Diaria*, & *Ephemera febris*.

This Fever is often excited by sudden passions of the mind, as vehement anger, &c. and also by our abode too long in the Sun, or by vitiously using any other of the six nonnatural things so called; for which there is no great need to prescribe Medicines for a Cure, it being not difficult, the very nature of
of

of such a Fever terminating it self, most commonly by a breathing sweat, especially if you substract the Patient from the inflammatory Cause.

If the Fever continues longer, it may be called in Greek *σύννοχος*, *ex συνέχω*, *continuo*. From whence it is called in Latin *febris continua*, *quæ nullas hujusmodi mutationes habet, quæ accessiones videri possint, sed unicam modo accessionem a principio usque ad finem nullis exacerbationibus distinctam.*

The continual Fever is also called *Homotona*, *quæ similem calorem ad finem usque servat.*

It is also called *Acmaistica*, *quæ continuo crescit & intenditur.*

A *Synochus*, or continual Fever, may be *Diffe-* divided into two sorts, *viz.* that which is not *rence.* putrid, called in Latin *Synochus non putrida*, and that which is putrid, called *Synochus putrida.*

In a *Synochus non putrida*, the bloud, and other humours is a little sharper than is natural, and the heat somewhat great and vaporous, declining a little to the nature and manner of those called putrid.

Continual Fevers are oft times mixt or compounded with those intermitting, having some fits, and again remissions, so that they are not intermitting, but still remain continual.

These

These fits come sometimes every day, sometimes the third, and sometimes the fourth day; whence it may deservedly be nam'd, either a *Quotidian*, *Tertian*, or *Quartan* continual Fever.

These Fevers upon the account of their divers causes, may not unfitly be distinguish'd into *Cholerick* and *Lymphatick* Fevers.

And because under the general name of *Lympha*, we do not onely comprehend, that *Lympha* which goes from the conglobated Glandules, and other parts to the Heart; but also the Juice of the *Pancreas*, and Spittle itself, proceeding from the conglomerated Glandules, and also the Liqueur that ariseth from the three-fold sway of the Guts, all mixt together with *Lympha*, and the blood in circulating with it.

Hence may *Lymphatick* fevers be subdivided into glandular, pancreatick and salivary Fevers.

All these Fevers may differ something according to the divers Constitution of other humours together being in the Body.

But I shall wave the nice descriptions and differences of Fevers, and let the dextrous, and judicious Physician put a difference between them, as their Symptoms shall direct and indicate, for though there are many sorts of continual Fevers not putrid, yet the Cure is almost the same in all; I shall therefore

fore (in a few words) mention some of their differences, taken from the more grievous Symptoms oft accompanying them; after the example of famous Practitioners, and chiefly great *Platerus*, and the most famous *Helmont*, and judicious *Sylvius*, &c.

1. First, let us take notice of the exceeding heat, and most urgent burning, which attend some Fevers. Symptomes.

It is called in Greek *καύσος*, which doth signify burning; in which the sick is very dry and thirsty, which is hard to be quenched. Causes.

This heat is not of the essence of the disease, but proceedeth from the inflamed spirits, as is before mention'd in page 98.

Neither doth the great thirst in Fevers, proceed from heat and driness, as in a true and natural thirst, but from some excrementitious matter, which adhereth to the sensitive faculty of the internal membrane of the Stomach, which is common to the Throat, Mouth and Lips, as that famous Physician, and ingenious Anatomist Doctor *Alexander Read*, did well observe; which is also the cause, that those parts are always afflicted in this dry and thirsty distemper.

In this Symptome, Choler is peccant, not onely in a salt Acrimony, but also an inflammable oiliness; hence the Pulse is very great, and over frequent, &c.

2. Raving may be oft observ'd in many Fevers, which is grievous to the sick for some time, chiefly when the Fever is malign, or epidemical.

The cause of this is Choler peccant as aforesaid, which so diminisheth the viscoufness of the Juice of the *Pancreas*, that it causeth a vitious Effervescency with it, and being made sharper, it produceth a humour not much unlike black Choler, which causeth the Head-ach, and Watchings, and hence Ravings, and at length sometimes Convulsions, and Death it self.

There are many more Symptoms belonging to continual or synochal Fevers.

1. As first, a speedy wasting of several parts of the body, caused by Choler, the Cure whereof may be referred to the Cure of a Hectick Fever.

2. A malignity, which suddenly dejecteth the vital strength, without manifest cause; which for the most part is Epidemical. But of this I intend to treat particularly in Chap. 8. of this Book.

3. The last Symptome which I shall here mention, is seldom observ'd; in which (all the time of the disease) the external parts are cold, while the internal parts burn; and therefore 'tis called by the Latins *Lipiria febris*, and in Greek *λειπυρία πυρετός, quia destituitur ardore externo.*

*Lipiria
febris.*

Some

Some think this distemper consists of a double Fever, Cholerick, and Pancreatical; and not without reason, because such like vapours may be continually rais'd in the small guts, by the Juices of the *Pancreas* universally over-sour; which may be confus'd onely with the Mass of Bloud, and breed a sense of cold in the habit of the Body, whilst a burning heat is stir'd up in the internal parts by a Fever, caused by Choler more oily than sharp.

The cause of every continual Fever not *Cause.* putrid, is sometimes Choler vitiated, sometimes *Lympha* together with the Juice of the *Pancreas* and Spittle, and many times all these together are ill affected.

These vitiated humours flowing always to the Heart, cause a continual Effervescency in the right Ventricle of it; whence the Pulse is continually produc'd more frequent against nature.

Fevers in Children are caused either by the Food abounding in quantity, or by some vicious quality of it, or from an ill disposition of the digestive ferment.

Milk is the general Food of Children, and there is such a propensity in its own nature to curdle, that if it be not quickly digested, it obeyeth the acid Ferment of the Stomach, and is soon coagulated like new tough Cheese, and if it be not speedily vomited up, it be-
gets

gets a putrefactive Ferment, which produceth terrible Symptoms, as griping, scouring, vomiting, &c.

History.

I know a Woman, that had a young Child about a Month old, which was taken very ill with Convulsions, after which followed a thorough Thrush, with a Fever, accompanied with the aforesaid Symptoms, as griping, &c. which continu'd many days, till the whole body was so maciated, that it was in a total *Atrophia*; and when there was no hopes of recovery, the Nurse gave the Child a little of the infusion of the Antimonial Cup, which caused it to vomit up a Curd, three or four inches long, very green, and as tough as new Cheese: After which the Child did wonderfully recover and grow fat.

Progn.

Continual acute Fevers are oft times accompanied with a secret malignity, and therefore dangerous; *parvæ febres quandoque valde malignæ.*

Pars affecta.

The Stomach (in continual Fevers) is most commonly primarily affected through undigestion, or else from Excrements, not being separated and orderly evacuated; which causeth an irregular Ferment, or nonnatural heat in the Stomach; which (though begun else where) is much aggravated by vitiating Juices, found in this first Elaboratory of decocting Nature.

For as in humane frame, the first heat of Nature (preparatory to all her depending motions) is the digestive heat for Chylification in the Stomach; so likewise the corrupting or exasperating of the same, either by the four Ferments, or too much of the overflowing Gall, is the Cause of most Fevers.

Therefore in the beginning of the Cure, Cure. evacuation by vomiting never ought to be neglected by the carefull Phyfician (provided it be duely timed) because then most commonly it removeth the sole cause of the feverish Intemperature, without the help of any other means.

And here I commend Antimonials well prepared, before all others, seeing that Antimony as well rightly prepar'd, as administred, serves no less to purifie Man's body than Gold.

But if the Patient's body be costive, and there be eminent signs of a *Plethora*, or great fulness of Bloud; then let a carminative Clyster be first administred, and after its operation let a Vein be opened, and draw seven or eight ounces of bloud at a time, and if there be occasion let it be reiterated; for I always prefer its repeated less diminution, (as need requires) sometimes instituted in the same day, before great evacuations made suddenly, which hath brought many Evils to the sick.

It

It matters little what vein be opened, unless in Women, because of the monthly Terms either at hand, or hindred.

And seeing it is the duty of every honest Physician to be Natures helper, he ought to endeavour to remove all impediments, whereby the sick may be cured more quickly, safely and pleasantly, without demurs, to magnifie the Cure, and inflame the reckonings.

Wherefore since the first curative intention of most Fevers, is the discharge of the first turgent *Monitor* from the Stomach, and adjacent parts by vomiting, as is before said.

Let the Patient (upon the discovery of the assaulting Enemy) take an Antimoniall Emetick, and if one doth not suffice, let it be reiterated; by which the Morbifick matter will be evacuated, nature calmed, and the contemperating of the incited, or enraged nonnatural heat, will be the easier performed.

Cautio.

But here the Sex is to be consider'd, the Female not so well enduring this evacuation; because Emeticks cause great Comotions, and flatuous Vapours in them; which may also prevent or corrupt nature's own intentions in her great discharge of turgent humours.

Where

Wherefore administer no Emetick to them, except they vomit very easily; but rather let the peccant humours be diminisht, or emptied out gradually by the following decoction to be taken twice a day to three or four ounces.

Take the Roots of Parsly, Fennel, Plantain, Peony, Dandelion, Succory, of each two ounces; the Leaves of Endive, House-leek, Fumitory, Damask-roses, of each one handfull. Let them be cleansed, bruised and infused (for a Night) in one quart of Fountain-water very hot, then boil it gently till a third part be consumed, strain it and add Syrup of Succory with Rhubarb, the best *Manna*, of each two ounces; Powder of Cream of Tartar, and Tartar vitriolated, of each two drachms; Oil of Sulphur twenty drops; mix it all together.

*Purging
Decoction.*

This pleasant Medicine will conduce much to correct the salt sharpness of Choler, and will also amend its Oily inflameableness, and separate it from the Bloud, and mildly dispose it, and the rest of the abounding humours to be voided out by stool.

After these Evacuations, give the sick the following Medicine twice a day in a little thin broth, or Water-gruel.

Take Salt of Amber, volatile Salt of Harts-horn, Tartar vitriolated, of each six grains; mix it.

*Volatile
Powder.*

This excellent volatile Medicine is both absterfive, and Diuretick, and will cleanse the Stomach and Intestines of the remaining *Sordes*, and expell them by Urine.

In the Declination of the Fever, if sleep be wanting; this following Julep will much avail, both to cause rest, and refresh the spirits.

**Cordial
Julep.**

Take the Waters of *Carduus benedict.* Fennel, of each two ounces; Treacle-water, Syrup of red Poppies, of each one ounce; *Laudanum opiatum* six grains; Salt of Wormwood half a drachm; Spirit of Salt twenty drops; mix it, and give the sick three or four spoonfulls every three hours.

By the frequent use of this Cordial Julep, (or one like it) all pains will be eased, nature quieted and relieved, and the importunate thirst allayed.

But if thirst still urgeth, give the dulcified Spirit of Salt, or of Niter, in Posset-drink, and all the Liquids they take, from six, to ten or twelve drops at a time.

If you fear there be any Malignancy in the Fever; give the sick eight or ten grains of *Bezoardic. mineral.* every fourth hour, in a spoonfull or two of the aforesaid Julep, or good sound Canary-wine, to keep the Patient in a breathing sweat.

As for the Cure of Fevers attended with grievous and furious raging, and watchings,

ings, &c. I refer you to the Chapter of Phrenesies, which is full to this purpose.

I shall now give some directions to young Physicians and Nurses, and so conclude this Chapter of Fevers in general.

1. First, give no Opiats in the beginning of a Fever, because they tye up the *Archæus* of the Stomach, and first passages, thereby hindring it from expelling, the occasional cause of the Disease.

2. Give the sick neither *Mithridate*, nor *Diascordium* (as is the common custome) nor apply it to the Wrists, nor Stomach, (nor any thing else that is nauseous) whilst Nature and the Disease are struggling; but if the Patient tends to coldness, you may moisten a piece of Rose-cake, or a tost of stale Bread in *Sylvius's* Spirit, or for want thereof in Brandy dulcified, and apply it to the Stomach twice a day, which will revive nature, and fortifie it against the invading Enemy.

3. Give no meat whilst the disease is on them, for the Stomach is not fit to receive it, neither hath it strength to digest it; and therefore it will become a recruit or supply to the Disease, except it be speedily vomited up again.

4. If it be a Child, give it not any Milk, and if it Suck, wean it; for Milk is the first matter, and foundation of this disease in them; neither give it Beer, nor water, nor

any cooling things to correct the heat, because it will weaken nature, and strengthen the Disease.

But hot Posset-drink turn'd with White-wine, or sound Beer with a little Vinegar, may be drank liberally, after the Cause is removed.

5. If the sick be Adult, you may give two parts of Water, and one of good Wine, either French Wine or Sherry; but Malaga, or any other sweet Wine is not so good.

6. When the Patient begins to recover, the plainest broths, and gruels, are the best; till then a little is too much; and if you did use Salt and Vinegar, instead of Spice and Sugar, it would agree better with them.

C H A P. VII.

Of intermitting Fevers.

AN intermitting Fever is that which returns after intervalls, sometimes longer, sometimes shorter in divers Fits; whence according to the divers space of every access or fit; the same gets also divers Names, for if a new Fit return daily, answering the precedent in proportion, it is called a Quotidian.

If

If it comes every other day, it is called a Tertian.

If the fit return after two days intermission, it is called a Quartan, and so forward, although Quintans, Sextans, &c. are seldom observ'd.

And here you may note, that intermit-^{Observa}ting Fevers do but seldom return in the ex-^{tion.}act intervall of natural days of twenty four hours; but return quicker or slower, for the most part; wherefore then they are said to anticipate the expected time for some hours, which is disliked, or to come later, which is commended by some.

Although it matters not, whether the fits anticipate, or come later; if so be that their continuance, and the grievousness of Symptoms (daily accompanying) be diminish'd.

There is great diversity among Authours concerning the Causes of intermitting Fevers, which I shall not insist on; but in a few words will set down the true Causes of them.

The causes then, are either external, or *Causes.* internal.

The external Cause of Agues is a stop of the usual necessary discharge of fermenting humours; the porous skin (being shut by external sudden cold) denies passage to the constant discharge of the sweatty humours,

which happens most commonly about Autumn; and likewise when any comes suddenly out of a hot Climate, into a cold Region; for the sweatty Vapours being detain'd by the Constipation of the skin, or shutting of the Pores, the same condense, and thence become sour, which chills the external parts, and causeth the shaking, or shivering cold fit, at the first invasion of this disturbing Foreigner; after which the inflaming Ferment of Choler (being exasperated) doth act its part, and (having gain'd Dominion) it doth rarefie the Bloud by degrees; whence the Pulse becomes greater and stronger) which is increas'd by an irritation of the Acrimony of Choler, and the rarefaction of the Bloud at the Heart; for the heat and burning in the Heart, and thence in the whole Body, is increas'd by Choler successively over-ruling.

The internal Cause of Agues or intermitting Fevers, is an obstruction of one or more of the lateral ducts or branches of the *Pancreas* or Sweet-bread, by reason of viscous Phlegm; which being separated from the Bloud by the Glandules of the *Pancreas*, is there collected by degrees; whence it is sent (in too large a quantity) to the main duct or pipe thereof, which detaineth the Juice of the *Pancreas* contrary to nature, which ought

ought continually to flow into the small Gut called *Duodenum*.

The Juice of the *Pancreas*, which is naturally sourish, being compelled to stand still in its passage, quickly grows more acrimonious, or acid; because the Volatile Spirit (which is naturally conjoin'd to it, to temper it) doth gradually fly away; by which this Juice (becoming more sharp and acid) acquires a putrefactive Ferment; whence at length it makes way through the obstructing Phlegm, and is effused into the *Duodenum*, where meeting with Choler, it stirs up a vitious effervescency, or preternatural Ferment, from whence comes the Ague fit, with all its Symptoms; as in the beginning Horreur, Chilness, Cold, Shaking, &c. then presently follows Reachings, Yawning, and Vomiting, &c.

At length acrimonious and flatulent Vapours (raised by the aforesaid vitious Effervescency) are carried through the Lacteal veins, and Thoracick passage, and so through the *Vena cava ascendens*, (in what form soever) to the right Ventricle of the Heart: and by its Acrimony, alters and troubles the vital Effervescency, and by over stirring the Heart, causeth a more frequent Pulse; and many times produceth grievous Symptoms, as great Heat and Thirst, difficulty of breathing, Heart-ach, Raving, Swouning, and

all other Symptoms, that happen in all intermitting Fevers.

*The cause
of the Re-
turn of the
fit.*

The nature of viscus Phlegm is such, that though it be pierced through by the Juice of the *Pancreas* too acid and acrimoni-ous, yet it doth presently run together and unite again, and so repairs and renues the obstruction that was in part opened ; and the Juice of the *Pancreas* being stopped as before, grows sour by standing still as afore-said, so that it forceth through the Phlegm that stopped its natural passage, and so produceth, a new fit ; sooner or later, as the Phlegm (obstructing the lateral passage of the *Pancreas*) is pierced through by the fore-mention'd Juice.

For if the obstructing Phlegm be not very glutinous, and the Juice of the *Pancreas* be plentiful and acid, a new fit of an intermitting Fever will return in the space of twenty four hours, and therefore 'tis called

Quotidian. a Quotidian

But if the Phlegm be very viscus and plentiful, and the Juice of the *Pancreas* be little in quantity, and also tart and obtuse ; so much the slower will the new fit of the intermitting Fever be produced ; so that it is sometimes three, sometimes four days, before the returning of the fit ; from whence it is called a Quartan, or Quintan, &c.

So likewise as oft as the obstructing
Phlegm,

Phlegm, and the Juice of the *Pancreas* are in a medium, *viz.* The Phlegm more glutinous and plentiful, than in the Quotidian, but not so much as the Quartan; as likewise the Juice of the *Pancreas* is more in quantity, and more acid than in the Quartan, but not so plentiful and acid, as in a Quotidian) so oft new fits of intermitting Fevers will return almost every other day, from whence they may be called Tertians, which much differ in their Symptoms beyond what other intermitting Fevers do, although none of them return in the exact intervall of the Days or Hours before mention'd, but return quicker or slower for the most part.

The Cure of all intermitting Fevers will *Cure.*
be perform'd,

1. First, if the glutinous coagulated Phlegm, (which is the cause of the obstruction) be cut and dissolv'd, and wholly carried out of the Body.

2. If the increas'd Acidity, and Acrimony of the Juice of the *Pancreas*, be temper'd and corrected.

3. If its vitious Effervescency with Choler, &c. In the small Gut, be hindred and amended.

Phlegm obstructing will be cut most commodiously with Aromatics, and any Volatile Salt.

This Volatile Aromatick Julep may serve for Example.

Take

*Cordial
Zulep.*

Take the Waters of *Carduus*, Parsley, Fennel, Fumitory, Succory, Treacle, Cinamon, of each one ounce ; Syrup of *Carduus*, the five opening Roots, of each an ounce and half ; Powder of Crabs-eyes, Tartar vitriolated, of each one drachm ; Salt of Amber, Antimony Diaphoretick, of each half a drachm ; *Laudanum opiat.* ten grains ; Oil of Cloves six drops ; mix it.

Take a spoonfull of this Volatile Medicine, often in a day throughout the whole Cure, using some exercise, that thereby the whole Body may grow warm, and the force of the medicine being disperst over all the Body, may come at last to the lateral passages of the *Pancreas*, and dissolve the obstruction.

Three or four hours before the coming of the fit, you may give three or four spoonfulls of the aforesaid Cordial, which will not onely cause a breathing sweat, but will temper and correct the increas'd Acidity and Acrimony of the Juice of the *Pancreas*, and hinder, and amend its vitious Effervescency with Choler, &c. in the small gut, which will conduce much to a Cure.

Three hours before the return of the next fit, administer an antimonial Emetick, which is in this case proper before all others ; for by the help thereof, not onely Choler abounding, but also phlegm obstructing, will be expell'd

expell'd to the small gut, and thence to the Stomach, and at length by the mouth ; and the straining to vomit doth many times procure a stool or two, which is very beneficial.

But if the sick be a Female, or vomiting be prejudicial, or not approv'd of ; then such things as cut and purge phlegm downwards, may be administred, for example.

Take of *pil. fætidx* one drachm ; *Mercur. dulcis*, Powders of Troches Alhandal, Scammony prepar'd, Tartar vitriolated, of each half a Scruple, Salts of Amber and Wormwood, of each one Scruple ; Spirit of Salt Armoniack, Oil of Amber, of each ten drops, with Syrup of Buckthorn ; make it into a Mass for Pills. *Purging Pills.*

Take four or five of these Pills, four hours before the coming of the fit ; which will both cut, and purge the viscous Phlegm out of the Body, and also educe other peccant humours.

After purging or vomiting, let the sick often take the following Powder in a glass of generous Wine, or in two or three spoonfulls of the Cordial Diaphoretick before mention'd, to provoke sweat as is there directed.

Take Volatile Salt of Harts-horn, Salts of Amber, Worm-wood and *Carduus*, Tartar vitriolated, of each ten grains ; Sugar of Pearls the weight of them all, mix them for two doses, *Powder.*

You

You may take a dose of it two or three hours before the access of the fit; which will wonderfully conduce to dissolve the obstruction, and cause a breathing sweat.

Let these evacuations be as often reiterated as occasion requires.

If the intermitting Fever hath continu'd long, or the sick hath a Plethorick body, let a vein be opened.

By these few forms the young Practitioner may easily invent other effectual Medicines: in some things to be varied as the distemper requires.

C H A P. VIII.

Of Malignant Fevers.

IN the Chapter of Fevers in general I told you, that Synochial, or continual Fevers were without any fit, to their last and complete ceasing; and likewise I did distinguish them into putrid, and not putrid.

Those that are not putrid, have little or no malignity in them, but the putrid are all ways accompanied with malignity.

Difference.

A malignant Fever differs from others in this, that it draws its putrefaction immediately

ately from its own matter, putrefaction being joined with it; from whence the vital strength is suddenly, and unexpectedly dejected; or far more grievous Symptoms occur, than are wont to be observ'd in such a like disease.

Malign Fevers are either more acute, ending in few days; or longer, continuing more days.

And they are either contagious, and epidemical raging among many in the same time, having a common cause, as the Air or Food vitiated, &c. Infecting others, or else they are not contagious.

Among contagious Fevers, we may not neglect to speak something of a Calenture, because it is a contagious distemper, assailing not onely those which use the Sea; but also many that live near the Sea-shore, in Sea-port Towns, &c. are subject to it. Calenture.

The signs of this disease are a great pain of the Head, sometimes with violent raging fits, and *delirium*, the rest of the Body being in good temper; the sick do fancy the Water to be a green Meadow, and will endeavour to get into it. Signs.

The cause of a Calenture is the intemperature of the Climate, together with ill diet, causing strong obstructions, and an ill habit of body, by which flatuous vapours are encreas'd in the body, and in time ascend to the Head. The

*Cause of
Maligni-
ty.*

The cause of the malignity (in this, and all other putrid fevers) is a sharp volatile salt in the Air, which is drawn into the Lungs by degrees, and weakens the liquor of the glandules (which is naturally fourish) and makes it sluggish, and of little force, whence the natural consistency of the blood is diminish'd, and the separation of the Animal spirits often hindered.

The sharp volatile salt aforesaid, may be also swallowed down with food or spittle into the Stomach, or it may enter the pores of the body ; by which not onely the liquor of the glandules, but the blood also may be infected ; hence depends the variety of symptoms which may be observ'd in these Diseases.

Signs.

In Malign fevers, there oft precedes a light shivering, after which a gentle heat soon follows ; the pulse is frequent and unequal, though little and weak, and sometimes deficient, the sick is often drowsie, and posselt with a kind of Lethargy ; and when they sleep, they are often vex'd with turbulent dreams ; they are often grip'd in the Stomach, and troubled with loathing and vomiting, accompanied with the Head-ach, raving, giddiness, &c. also there is great thirst, weariness, and unquietness of the whole body ; sometimes there happens cholerick and fetid loosnesses ; and also a hæmorrhage

morrhage at the nose or womb doth often concur.

1. If tumors in the glandules, and spots and little pimples, divers both in colour and greatness, do break forth in many parts of the body, they are signs of great malignity. *Progn.*

2. If the sick get no ease after sweating promoted by Art, there is little hopes of recovery ; also if the extreme parts soon wax hot, and again are presently cold, 'tis an ill sign.

First to preserve and defend the body from all malignity, and infection in time of contagion. *Cure.*

I commend the frequent, and moderate use of sour and tart things mixt with all things potable, for the Patient's drink, or food ; as Barberries, Quinces, Oranges, Pomegranates, Limmons, Wood-sorrel, Verjuice, Vinegar, &c.

In the beginning of malign Fevers, and also the Calenture, if a loathing urgeth, part of the acrimonious volatile salt adheres to the tunicles of the Stomach ; wherefore in this Case, first administer an Antimonial Emetick, which is well prepared, mild and fixt, because it hath an admirable sulphur in it, whereby any sharpness is wonderfully temper'd, and the Malign Poison is thereby in part sent out by Vomit and Stool.

After

After the Operation of the Emetick, let a Cordial Sudorifick be presently administered, that the remaining part of the Malign Poison may be driven forward, and expelled most safely, and commodiously out of the Body.

*Cordial
Sudorifick.*

The following Cordial may serve for example.

Take of Epidemical water, Spirit of Vinegar, of each one ounce; The Waters of Treacle, and Cinamon, of each half an ounce; the Waters of *Carduus*, Scabious, of each two ounces; Syrups of the Juice of *Carduus*, Clove-gilliflowers, of each one ounce and half; Antimonie Diaphoretick, Bezoar-mineral, of each one drachm; Venice-treacle, two drachms; mix it.

Let the sick take a quarter of this Diaphoretick Julep, and dispose the Body to sweat, and after half an hour, take one or two spoonfulls more, and so go on, till a profitable Sweat follow.

In the interim if the sick be thirsty, let them drink a little warm Broth temper'd to a gratefulness, with juice of Oranges, Citrons, or Verjuice, &c. whereby the breaking forth of the sweat will not onely be promoted, but also the hurtfull Acrimony of the peccant Salt will be corrected, and asswaged.

After this excellent medicine hath been suffi-

sufficiently and rightly us'd, so that you perceive the Malign Poison to be carried out of the Body; yet you must persist in the moderate use of it, as likewise in the use of four things, a little Harsh, mixt with drink, or Broth as before said; because they much conduce to restore (by degrees) the former consistency to the Bloud.

In Calentures, Phlebotomy may be safely used.

CHAP. IX.

Of the Plague or Pestilence.

THE Plague or Pestilence is called in Greek λοιμός à λύω, *solvo*, quod vitam solvat.

It is called in Latin *Pestilentia*, & *Pestis*, ex depascendo, quod veluti incendium depascit.

It is also called πλάγᾱ, à πλήγω, *percutio* hinc *Angl.* the Plague.

Pestis significat omne malum; quod tam inanimis quam animatis mortem & exitium repentino adfert.

The Plague is a contagious disease, suddenly afflicting the Heart, and all the vital, animal and natural faculties with many grievous Symptoms.

Cause.

The Cause is chiefly the sins of Mankind, provoking the great God to send this Pesteiferous distemper as a judgment on them for their Impiety.

The Cause (next to God's judgment) is a sharp venomous and contagious volatile Salt in the Air, very much heightned (inspired with the Air into the Lungs, or is swallowed down with the food or spittle into the Stomach ; it may also get in through the pores into the Body) by which the acid liquor in all the conglobated glandules is weakened and made sluggish, that it doth not circulate with its wonted force : whence the natural consistency and rarefaction of the Bloud is diminished, and the separation of the Animal Spirits hindered ; and the vital strength is much oppressed, by which the Pulse becomes not onely little, but also languishing ; till at length the Spirits are extinguished, and Death (unexpected to many) carries them speedily (*torrenti similis*) in fiery Chariots, God knows where.

Signs.

All the signs in Malign Fevers are common (and much heightned) in the Pest ; besides many other grievous symptoms, as Diarrhæa, Hemorrhage at the Nose, Ears, Eyes, Mouth and Secrets ; sometimes yellowness of the Eyes, Buboes in the Groins, Armpits, and behind the Ears, and in some white Bladders,

ders, and Carbuncles, also spots called the Tokens, with raving, &c.

1. The Pest is deceitfull above all other diseases, therefore no certain prognostick can be drawn of it; for many have died when there hath been great hopes of recovery, and on the contrary, many have escaped with mortal signs. *Progn.*

2. A Bubo is less dangerous than a Carbuncle, and it than the spots, (vulgarly the Tokens) which most commonly portend Death wheresoever they are.

3. Buboes incompassed with a blue or livid circle, are most commonly a mortal sign, especially if they suddenly disappear, unless the Malign humour be sent to some other part; and if with a Bubo behind the Ears, there be pain of the Throat without inflammation 'tis mortal.

4. If a Carbuncle rise after a Bubo, and look white, with a litle push or tail at the end of it, 'tis dangerous, except the Fever do very much abate; and if after cauterizing, or cupping, the Carbuncle abate not in twenty four hours, 'tis a sign of Death approaching, except matter appear; and if Carbuncles seize the Stomach, Guts, Bladder, or other Intrails, it portends Death.

5. Deliriums, Drowfiness, Heart-ach, Trembling, Convulsions, great driness of Tongue, are all bad signs; also a Dysentery

is most commonly mortal ; but a Hemorrhage at the Nose, or *Menses* are not so dangerous.

To preserve from this Pestiferous distemper, although transmigration in the fear of God may be lawfull, yet let none think to escape by flying, and so neglect their duties to God, for 'tis impossible to run out of his reach, for he filleth Heaven and Earth with his presence ; wherefore let fervent prayers be put up to God, whose compassions fail not ; and then make use of an honest Physician.

1. You must endeavour to purifie the infected Air, with great fires, wash the house daily, and after sprinkle it with Vinegar ; and Fume either with Pitch, Frankincense, Mirrh, Amber, Benjamin, Wood, and Berries of Juniper, &c.

2. Avoid all passions, watchings, and immoderate exercise and venery.

3. Eat nothing that is hard of concoction, and use a moderate diet though easie of digestion, and drink good sound Wine, &c.

4. Go not forth with an empty Stomach, but always take some preservative against infection. For example,

Take Spirit of Vinegar, Julep of Roses, of each one ounce ; mix it.

Vinegar, Verjuice, Oranges, Limmons, Citrons, Pomgranats, Barberries, Quinces, Wood-forrel, &c. are all very good, used
as

as before directed in Malign Fevers.

This Poison must not be sent out by vom-^{Cure.}iting or purging; neither is phlebotomy allowed.

For it is known by manifold experience, that the cure of the Pest is most happily instituted by Cordial Sudorificks, rightly prepar'd of Antimony, because it hath an admirable Sulphur in it, whereby not onely sharpness is wonderfully temper'd, but the Malign poisonous volatile Salt is thereby most safely driven forward, and expelled by sweating out of the Body; to which may be added other Cordials, as followeth.

Take the Powders of Crabs-eyes, Tartar^{Cordial} vitriolated, Antimony Diaphoretick, Be-^{Electuary.}zoar-mineral, of each one scruple; Bezoar-stone of the East, red Coral prepar'd, Salts of Rhue, *Scordium*, of each half a scruple; Venice-treacle, two drachms; Spirit of Salt ten drops; mix it into an Electuary with *confectio de Hyacintho*.

Let the sick take half a drachm of this Cordial Electuary every three hours, and drink three or four spoonfulls of this Cordial Julep after it.

Take of Epidemical-water, the Waters of^{Cordial} *Carduus*, Borage, *Scordium* compound, of^{Julep.} each three ounces; the Waters of Treacle, Cinamon, Syrups of the juice of *Carduus*, and Limmons, Syrup of Saffron, of each one

ounce ; Salt Prunella, and Salt of Wormwood, of each one drachm ; *Laudanum opiat.* ten grains ; mix it for a Cordial.

Let the sick person take the aforesaid medicines, till sweat is plentifully provoked ; then let the sweat be gently wiped off with warm linen cloaths.

In the mean while give the sick a little hot Chicken-broth, or other Broth of fresh Meat, temper'd to a gratefulness with some sour thing, as was directed in Malign Fevers, as Barberries, Wood-sorrel, Limmons, &c.

You must persist in this course till the danger be over, and some time after, (though the sick think themselves well) lest the disease deceive you by a sudden surprize again.

There are many Cordial Confections always to be had ready at Apothecaries Shops, as Mithridate , *Diascordium* , Venice-treacle , London-treacle , Treacle-water , &c. any of which may be used by the Rich or Poor, for they will not onely cause sweating, but also will temper and moderate the hurtfull acrimony of the volatile Salt before mentioned.

You may dip a hot Toast in *aq. prophylactica* , and apply it to the region of the Stomach, and also tye some of it in a rag, and smell to it.

If there be great drowiness, avoid Opiates,
and

and take the Cordial Julep without the *Laudanum*; but if there be great Watching, Vomiting, Flux of the Belly, or Hicket, you may give it with the *Laudanum* prescrib'd, for it will much conduce to ease the sick of all these symptoms.

If there be a Bubo, apply a strong Vesicatory, and when the Blister is well raised, open it, and dress it with Mustard, and *Basilicon*, of each equal parts; after cure it according to Art.

If there be a Carbuncle, apply Leeches, or Ventoses, with scarification, or the Actual or Potential Caustery, after which often apply Mithridate, 'till the Eschar be separated; then dress it with *Unguent. Basilicon*, and *Ægyptiacum*, or else you may use Butter of Antimony 'till the Ulcer be well cleansed and fitted for the last consolidation which may be performed by any desiccative Medicine.

C H A P. X.

Of the Small-pox, and Measles.

THE Small-pox, and Measles are called in Greek ἐξανθήματα, and in Latin *Morbilli, quasi parvi morbi, vel parvorum morbi.*

They are also called *Variolæ, & Pustulæ, ex vario, vel varium facio, quod cutis fit varia.* Because the skin is of various forms.

These distempers are most commonly attended with a Malign Fever, which oft proves Epidemical, Contagious and Mortal, and therefore may justly be termed Pestilential.

The Small-pox is a cutaneous Eruption, or large Pustules, something like to Warts on the Skin, with Inflammation, which in few days comes to suppuration, if the sick recover.

The Measles are little Pustules in the Skin, with a deep redness, and may be best perceived by feeling; they are usually discussed in five or six days without suppuration.

There is an other sort of Pustules, or Tubercles, like little Bladders, incident to Men, Women and Children; which are without Inflammation or redness; and also without a Fever.

Some

Some call them Cristals, others Blisters, but Country people call them Swine-pox, Hen or Chicken-pox, &c.

To these also may be referred, those red fiery spots which break out about the fourth or fifth day (in Malign Fevers) all over the Body ; and if the sick recover, they vanish about the eighth day, after which the *Cuticula* cometh away in flakes ; this is commonly called the Scarlet Fever.

The signs of the Small-pox approaching, *Signs.* are pains of the Head, shining before the Eyes, with redness and swelling of the Face, and sometimes bleeding at the Nose ; also a grievous pain of the Back, which reacheth to the Neck, with great heat and pricking all over the Body ; there is often loathing of the Stomach, and vomiting, with trembling of the Heart, great terrour in sleep, difficulty of breathing, and sometimes raving and convulsion.

The cause of the Small-pox and Measles, *Causes.* is an ill quality or impurity of the Mothers blood, with which the Child was nourish'd in the Womb, which doth communicate pollution, and defile the mass of Blood ; and after the Child is born, when there is an ill disposition of the Air proportionable to the disease, there followeth a peculiar effervescency or ebullition of the Blood and other humours, by which nature is enraged and pro-

provoked to cast forth the impurity.

The excrementitious matter is either thin or thick; if it be thin, the Measles follow, if thick, the Small-pox are produced.

And if there be a Malignant constitution of the Air, it causeth not onely a purging forth of the corrupt matter of the Bloud &c. but corrupteth the whole mass of Bloud and so produceth a dangerous and Epidemical Small-pox.

Progn.

If they come out red, and soon ripen or turn white, being round pointed, and outward in the skin; if the voice and breathing be free, without any grievous symptoms there is no danger, but if there be a great Fever (which is not abated after their eruption) with great thirst, and difficulty of breathing, also black or bloody Urine, or Stool, Hemorrhage at the Nose, Mouth, &c. doth signifie a great acrimony, and malignancy of the blood, that nature is compelled to evacuate it by such preposterous ways; and are most commonly mortal signs.

So likewise if it be long e'er they come out, and they be green, blewish, or black, and sink in again, the sick is in great danger of Death.

Cure.

As for the Cure of these distempers, if they be Malignant, or Epidemical, let the same means be used as is prescrib'd in Malignant Fevers, but if there be little or no sign of Malignancy

Malignancy, you may first administer an Antimonial Emetick, and after its operation, give this or the like Cordial.

Take the Waters of *Carduus*, Dragons, Treacle, *Scordium* compound, of each two ounces; Venice-treacle two drachms; Syrups of the Juice of Limmons, *Carduus*, Saffron, of each one ounce; Confection of Hyacinth one drachm; mix it for a Cordial.

*Cordial
Julep.*

Let the sick take two or three spoonfulls of this every half hour till a sweat be promoted; after sweating, keep the Patient in a warm Room, till the danger be over.

Before the Eruption, (if there be eminent signs of a *Plethora*, and the sick be adult) Phlebotomy may be used with good success.

Phlebotomy.

Bezoar and *Gascoign's Powder*, and *Diascordium* are commonly used in these Diseases.

You must endeavour to defend the inward parts with the pectoral decoction, to which you may add a little Saffron.

Also a Saffron Stay, in which is put a few Sows (called *Millepedes*) bruised, is excellent to defend the Throat.

For the Eyes, this water is good.

Take the Waters of Plantain, white Roses, of each three ounces; of Camphire, Saffron, of each ten grains; mix it.

*Water for
the Eyes.*

Or

Or you may use Womens milk, and Saffron.

Gargaris.

If the Throat and Mouth are inflamed, make a Gargarism with Plantain-water and Syrup of Mulberries.

To defend the Nose, put up this with a rag or feather.

Nodulas.

Take of red Rose-water, Vinegar of red Roses, of each one ounce; Powder of red Saunders, Camphire, of each one drachm mix it.

When the Small-pox begins to dry, anoint them often with Oil of sweet Almonds, and Oil of the Yelks of Eggs, which will prevent their pitting.

O F
DISEASES
OF THE
CELLS.

BOOK III.

CHAP. I.

Of the Thirsty disease.

THIS is called in Greek $\Delta\acute{\iota}\psi\alpha$, a $\delta\acute{\iota}\psi\alpha$, *fitio*, to be thirsty. In Latin 'tis called *fitis morbosæ*.

Thirst is the first natural Passion of Mankind, and also of Beasts; as is manifest by their first sucking milk out of the Breast to assuage it.

The causes of thirst augmented, are either *Cause.* external or internal.

The external are the Air over heated by
the

the Sun, over salt Food, too much exercise of body, vehement passions of the mind, as much anger, &c. prolong'd watches, the Body either too coſtive, or too looſe, much ſweating, Urine voided too plentifully, any notable Evacuation of Bloud, Milk or Seed, &c.

The internal Cauſe is deduced (for the moſt part) from too ſharp Choler, carried down into the ſmall Gut; where it raiſeth ſuch an Efferveſcency with the Juice of the *Pancreas* flowing thither, that thence are elevated ſalt Vapours to the Stomach and Gullet, and there produceth a ſenſe of drought.

It may alſo pierce through the lacteal Veſſels, and ſo to the Heart, and infect the Bloud too much with its Saltneſs, whence the Spittle, and the other Humours alſo become too ſalt, by which a great Thirſt is ſtirred up and augmented.

Signs. The ſigns are manifeſt, for the Patient's complaint for want of drink, will inform you.

Cure. This diſtemper may be cured by ſuch acid Liquours, and oily Emulſions, which will dilute the Lixivial Salt of Choler, and poſtently change its Acrimony, and aſſwage its ſharpneſs, and deduce it to the Bladder.

The following Julep may ſerve for Example.

Take

Take Tincture of Red-roses, Barley-water, *Julep.* of each twelve ounces; Cinamon-water two ounces, Syrup of Violets three ounces, Salt *Prunella* two drachms; mix it, and give the sick three spoonfulls every two hours.

This Emulsion is also of great Virtue, not onely to restrain Thirst, but mildly to procure rest also.

Take of French-barly boiled four ounces; *Emulsion.* sweet Almonds blanch'd; white Poppy-seeds, of each two ounces; let them be well beaten in a stone Mortar; then with two Quarts of Barley-water, the Waters of Cinamon and Fennel, of each two ounces; make an Emulsion; to which add Julep of Roses four ounces, Syrups of Violets, and the Juice of Limmons, of each two ounces; mix it.

Let the party thirsting, drink a moderate draught of this Emulsion, often in a day, which will be very acceptable.

You may also make gratefull Troches, or Pellets of Sugar, and Salt *Prunella*, to be kept in the Mouth, to deceive the Thirst.

If salt serous matter abound in the Body, purge it by Stool or Urine.

This gratefull Medicine may serve for both intentions.

Take the Roots of Flower-de-luce, Parsley, *Purgine* *China*, of each two ounces; Dandelion, Agri- *Infusions* mony, of each one handfull; *Senna* one ounce; Rhubarb half an ounce; Agarick, Turkey, Turbith,

Turbith, Jallap, of each three drachms ; Cinamon, Cloves, of each two drachms ; let them be cleansed, bruised and infused in two quarts of White-wine, for the space of twenty four hours, then strain it, and add Syrup of the five opening Roots four ounces ; of which you may give the sick four ounces every third day in the morning fasting.

If there be a salt Catarrh, it may be temper'd with Pills of Styrax, you may administer a Pill every Night going to bed.

Let the Patient's diet be Mutton or Veal-broth, without Salt.

CHAP. II.

Of Hunger vitiated.

Hunger may be called the Appetite of Meats, as Thirst is of Drinks.

It may be many ways deprav'd, viz. when it is augmented, diminish'd, or abolish'd.

Hunger augmented may be deprav'd two ways, either in quantity or quality ; if it be in quantity, there is more Nourishment desired than the Stomach can digest.

This distemper is called in Greek Βέλιμος, *excessus* & λιμός *fames* ; *quod affatim edatur.*

It is called by the Latines *fames canina*, and in English Dog's appetite; because in this distemper the sick do feed insatiably; after which some do purge and vomit like Dogs; and are presently hungry again, and sick if they do not eat.

If hunger be deprav'd in quality, then vitious things, which are not Food, (as Coals, Ashes, Clay, Turfs, Leather, and I know not what) are desired.

This is called in Greek *πίνα*, and *Pica* also *Pica*. in Latin; *ab ave Pica, vel quod varia appetant, ut Pica varii est Coloris, vel ex eo quod & Pica terram mandet.*

If this distemper be in Women with Child, *Malacia*. it is called in Greek *μαλακία*, and in Latin also *Gravidarum malacia*, which is an inordinate longing in them, of which I shall treat more at large in the Chapter of the Hypochondriack suffocation.

Hunger diminish'd is caused of too fat and *Cause*. viscous Spittle, swallowed down (by little and little) into the Stomach; and being unfit to promote the fermentation of Food, it passeth into the small guts, and there generates viscous Phlegm like to it self, which doth not onely dull the moderate acidity of the Juice of the *Pancreas*, but thereby at length all the acidity in the Body becomes less sharp and dull.

Choler also being too fat, arising from the small Gut, to the Stomach, doth there corrupt both the remainders of Food and Spit-
tle, and prostrates their gratefull acidity by which means the Appetite becomes dull.

These causes being complicated, if they be most grievous; will at length quite take away and abolish Hunger.

Cause. The cause of Hunger augmented is sometimes worms in the Stomach, which devour the *Chylus*; but most commonly it is caused by the over-sourness of the Juice of the *Pancreas* abounding in the Body, and chiefly in the small Gut; whence it sendeth four Vapours to the Stomach, which do potently urge and increase the sense of hunger.

Cause. The cause of hunger deprav'd in quality, (as *Pica*, &c. in Women) is the suppression of their monthly Courses, which is more or less corrupted about the Womb, and having not its natural Evacuation, it returneth, and (in circulation) is mixed with the whole Mass of Bloud, by which it is all vitiated, and deprav'd; and so produceth a Cachexy, or ill habit of Body, which in time corrupteth all the other humours; from whence not onely hunger, but all the functions are deprav'd.

Signs. Hunger augmented needs no other sign, than the devouring of Food.

The signs of Hunger deprav'd in quality are also manifest, as the longing desire for those things which are not food, as Coals, &c. before mention'd.

If these distempers continue long, they ^{Progn.} are difficult of Curation, because the sick will easily fall into a Cachexy, Dropsie, Consumption, Vomiting, Fluxes, &c.

Hunger increas'd, may be cur'd by giving those things which destroy, and do temperate and amend the over acidity of the Juice of the *Pancreas*, and do prevent its increase.

There are variety of Medicines (proper for these intentions) prescrib'd in the 6th. and 7th. pages of the first Book.

If hunger be diminish'd, or abolish'd, it may be cur'd by Medicines that correct and educe the viscus Phlegmatick humours, of which you may be thoroughly furnish'd in the 3^d. and 4th. pages.

If hunger be suddenly diminish'd by Chol- ^{Cure.} ler, either over fat, or abounding in plenty ; it may commodiously be evacuated by an Antimonial Emetick. Many other proper Medicines are set down in the 8th. and 9th. pages.

C H A P. III.

*Of want of Appetite, or loathing of Vic-
tuals.*

WAnt of Appetite is called in Greek ἀνορεξία, *ex α, sine, & ὁρεξις appetitus.*

In Latin 'tis called *inappetentia*, because in this distemper the sick hath no desire after food, but their minds are averse to, yea they loath most kind of meat and drink, which sometimes riseth to that height, that it takes away their strength.

This differs from vomiting onely in degrees, it being a desire to vomit up whatsoever troubles the Stomach, but cannot, either by reason of weakness, or toughness of the matter.

Nausea.

Loathing is called in Greek ναυτία, *ex ναύς Navis, quod navigantibus præcipue contingit.*

All loathing is either natural, or adventitious.

The natural (for the most part) is common to Women with Child; wherein 'tis thought by some, that the mind of the Child in the Womb is affected, as well in this distemper, as in the disease called *Malacia*, or longing; wherein if the Woman have not presently what she longs for, wheresoever she first puts her

her hand on any part of her body, in that part the Child is mark'd, as we may see often by experience.

The adventitious loathing, or that which cometh by accident, is stir'd up in healthy People by prejudice, they esteeming some sorts of food ungratefull, or prejudicial to their Health, and therefore their Stomachs loath them.

Sometimes nauseousness, and loathing even to vomiting, immediately follows Intemperance in eating and drinking, which is dangerous.

That we may the better judge of the causes of this distemper, let us first consider what is the natural Cause of Hunger, by which we may the easier discover it.

I judge the chief Cause of natural hunger to be the remainders of food fermented in the Stomach, and the longer it stays there, it is still more and more fermented by the Spittle; which is continually swallowed down, and intermix'd with it; and at length it raiseth a somewhat sour and gratefull Vapour, which pleasantly affects the upper Orifice of the Stomach, and so natural hunger seems to be produc'd.

And if food be with-held somewhat longer than ordinary, then this hunger is increas'd even in healthy People; which I think is promoted and augmented by the Juice of the

Pancreas, having a friendly Effervescency with *Choler* and *Phlegm* in the small Guts, from whence sour and gratefull Vapours are sent to the *Stomach*, which increaseth hunger; and if food be seldom taken, it may proceed to fainting fits.

Cause.

Hence we may gather, that if there be a vitious Effervescency of the aforesaid humours in the small Guts, then vitious Vapours are thence produc'd, which rising up to the *Stomach*, and other parts adjacent, not onely diminish hunger, but more or less deprave Thirst, as also the senses of tasting and smelling; hence it is that the sick do loath all sorts of food, as soon as they smell, taste or see it.

Progn.

1. Want of Appetite or Loathing is a digression from the natural State, and is therefore dangerous; and is worse in Children than Adults, because they require more Nourishment.

2. In all diseases this is an evil Symptome, and if the sick recover and want Appetite, or loath their Food, there is danger of a relapse.

Cure.

This distemper (either in healthy People, or those that are sick) may be cur'd,

1. First by freeing the mind from every prejudice.

2. By correcting or purging out the vitious and peccant humours.

If

If the Humours incline upward, they may be safely carried out by an Antimonial vomit; and after the operation, at night going to bed, let the sick take this Cordial Opiate.

Take the Waters of Damask-roses, Baum ^{Cordial} and Cinamon, of each one ounce; Syrup of ^{Opiat.} Clove-gilliflowers, red Poppies, of each half an ounce; *Confectio Alkermes* half a drachm; *Laudanum opiat.* four grains; Oil of Vitriol six drops; mix it.

But if the humours be very viscous, (and the Stomach be not nauseous) let them be purged out by stool, with such Medicines as have power to alter, amend and evacuate the vitious humours.

For example.

Take of the Decoction of *Senna Gereonis* ^{Purging} four ounces; the best *Manna*, Syrups of *Epi-* ^{Decoction.} *thymum*, Roses Solutive with *Senna*, of each half an ounce; mix it for two Doses, to be taken in the Morning fasting.

After purging, the Stomach must be strengthened; which may be done by this excellent Diet-drink.

Take the Roots of *China*, *Sarzeparilla*, of ^{Diet-} each eight ounces; *Guaiacum* two pound; ^{drink.} *Cinamon*, *Mace*, *Nutmegs*, of each one ounce; *Raisins of the Sun* stoned one pound; *Anise-* feed,

seed, Liquorish, of each one ounce and half; let them be bruised and infused in two Gallons of Fountain-water very hot, for the space of twenty four hours, then boil it to the consumption of the third part; strain it, and add Syrups of Cinamon, and of the Juice of Rasberries, of each four ounces; mix it, and let it be put into Bottles.

The sick may drink four ounces of it three times in a day.

Also candied Ginger, and Nutmegs preserv'd are good to corroborate the Stomach; a little of either of them may be eaten before the taking of the Diet-drink.

You may anoint the Stomach with Oil of Mace by expression; after which apply a Plaster *Stomachicum magistr.* to the Region of the Stomach.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Hicket, or Hiccough.

THE Hicket is called in Greek *αυγμδς*, and in Latin *singultus*, *ex αν cum*, *Ἔ gula*, *quod fere gula fiat*; *vel a sono gulæ*.

It is called in English a Sobbing or Yexing, being something like the Clocking of Hens with Chickens.

This

This disease was thought by the Ancients to be a deprav'd motion of the Stomach onely, by which it striveth to expell something which is hurtfull; but experience doth manifest, that it is a convulsive Motion of the Midriff, and not of the Stomach, because in this distemper, expiration is deprav'd; and this is chiefly perfected by the Muscles of the Belly, both by drawing down the Breast, and compressing all that is contain'd in the Belly, and driving them forward towards the Midriff, and so compelling it upward (its proper motion together concurring) by which a greater straitness is made in the Breast, which causeth the Lungs also to be straitned, and consequently the Air contain'd in them to be suddenly expir'd.

'Tis true, in this distemper, the Stomach is primarily affected by sharp Vapours, Wind, or humours whencesoever proceeding, which piercing to the membranous Centre of the Midriff, provoke it by pricking, or corroding, to perform that convulsive motion; in which the *Diaphragma* is contracted with a great force towards the Region of the Stomach, which suddenly and violently driveth it forward and outward, the convulsive Motion soon ceasing, and again often repeating.

The causes of the Hicket are either external, or internal.

The

The external are hurtfull, sharp and poisonous food, or medicines, taken into the Stomach, by which the Midriff is soon affected, and compelled to this violent, and presently interrupted convulsive Motion.

The internal cause riseth up out of the small Gut, by the vitious Effervescency of the humours there meeting; from whence sharp, halituous or windy Vapours are rais'd to the upper Orifice of the Stomach, by which it is soon corroded; and thence the sharp flatuous Humours, or Vapours, are presently carried through the Vessels of the *Diaphragma*, and sticking in its substance, do corrode its sensible parts, and compell it to that Convulsive repeating contraction of it self.

Progn.

When the Hicket is the Symptome of any other grievous disease, as an acute Fever, Inflammation, &c. it is dangerous, and sometimes mortal.

Cure.

In most ordinary Hickets, the party is easily restor'd, either by stopping the Breath, or by suddenly surprizing them with fear.

But as often as sharp poisonous Food or Medicines, or any flatuous humours be in the Stomach, &c. causing the Hicket; they must be presently expelled by an Antimoni-
al Emetick, which will not onely empty the peccant humours upward and downward,
but

but will correct and amend the hurtfull humours in the Body.

After the Operation of the Emetick, the following Cordial Opiate will conduce to dissipate the molesting Vapours, which remain about the Mouth of the Stomach; and will stay the Hicket, and mildly procure sleep.

Take the Waters of Treacle, Cinamon, *Cordial*
Syrup of Mint, of each one ounce; the Wa- *Opiat.*
ters of Baum and Mint, of each two ounces;
Confectio Alkermes two drachms; *Laudanum*
opiatum six grains; Spirits of Harts-horn,
Niter dulcified, of each twenty drops;
mix it.

Let the sick often take two spoonfulls of this Opiate, till they be dispos'd to rest.

If this distemper be obstinate, and yields not to the aforesaid Medicine, it shews that over-viscous Humours are conjoin'd to its Cause.

Therefore in an obstinate Hicket, it is better that the peccant humours be emptied downwards, with such Medicines as will both cut, and educe them. For which I commend these Pills.

Take *pil. fœtidæ, ex duobus*, of each fifteen grains; Oil of Harts-horn four drops; *Purgings*
make it into Pills; take them in the Morning *Pills.*
fasting.

Let these or the like Aromatick Pills with gums be taken at least twice a week; which
will

will not onely educe the hurtfull humours, but discufs Vapours, and Wind.

In the interim, let not the frequent use of the aforesaid Cordial Opiate be neglected, for it will wonderfully conduce to the Cure.

Sometimes it is good for the Patient to sneez, for it hath often prov'd succesfull.

Drinking of warm Milk from the Cow is also much commended, because it will aswage the hurtfull humours which remain about the Stomach, &c.

C H A P. V.

Of Belching.

BElching is called in Latin *ructatio* & *ructuatio esculenta, quæ fit ab homine saturo*, because it comes most commonly after a full Stomach.

Any thing which breaks up from the Stomach in the kind of a rift, or windy Vapour, and is expell'd by the Mouth with noise, may properly be called belching.

Cause.

The cause of this distemper, is either outward, or inward.

The outward is from windy food, or other flatuous things taken, as Beans, Pease, Radishes, &c.

The

The internal cause is either from a phlegmatick viscous humour adhering to the Stomach, where it is rarefied into wind by Aromatics taken; or from the same viscous humour in the small Guts, turned into wind by Choler over fat, and volatile; and thence it is driven forward to the Stomach, whereby the Fermentation of Food is deprav'd into a noisome Crudity; whence Belches like rotten Eggs, &c. are rais'd, which doth distend and gnaw the Stomach.

If the Phlegmatick matter, which cleaveth *Progn.* to the Ventricle, or small Guts, be very tough, the belching is more hardly excluded; whence often a swelling, and troublesome Distension of the Stomach follows; & *e contra.*

The Cure may be safely and happily performed, onely by correcting, and educing the Phlegmatick viscous humours abounding; for which there are variety of Medicines prescrib'd in the third and fourth Pages in the Cure of the Head-ach. *Cure.*

CHAP. VI.

C H A P. VI.

*Of Vomiting, and of the Cholerick and Iliack
Passion.*

VOMITING is called in Greek *ἔμετος*, ab
ἐμέω vomo.

It is a deprav'd motion of the Stomach, and a certain sign of health weakned; for in perfect health nothing is wont to be expell'd out of the Stomach by the Mouth.

In vomiting, sometimes food, (either crude, or more or less fermented) is cast out by the Gullet and Mouth; sometimes Bloud, sometimes Choler, and other times manifold humours and matter of divers Colours, Taste and Consistency; and sometimes the Excrements returning to the Stomach (as in *Iliaca passio*) is expell'd by that preposterous way of vomiting, wherein, *omnia naturæ præpostera legibus ibant.*

All the differences occurring in several sick People, are very difficult to be numbred, or reduc'd into a certain order; and much more to make an exact Examination of all the Symptoms, and thence to give a solid Judgment of every one.

In this distemper the Stomach is either primarily, or secondarily affected.

The

The Stomach is primarily affected to vomit, when the cause is in it self.

As by taking a Vomit, or when there is an Inflammation, or Exulceration of it; for then it is easily stir'd up (by food, or any other thing swallowed) to a violent and preternatural Contraction, and turning of its motion, whereby it is compell'd to cast out whatsoever is contain'd in it.

The Stomach is secundarily affected, when it is drawn by consent of other parts first distemper'd; as by the contracting motion of the Guts, either in part or wholly, in that most grievous disease called *Ileos*, or *Iliaca Ueosis*; or by the vehement shaking of the Midriff, together with a potent Contraction of the Muscles of the Belly, caused sometimes in a grievous Cough: By which all the Bowels contain'd in the Belly are compressed upward, toward the Breast, and urge the Stomach to change its natural motion.

As often as Cholerick humours are plentifully voided out, as well upward, as downward with great force, accompanied with troublesome Anxieties of the Midriff; it is *Choler.* called in Greek *χολέρα*, *ex cholē bilis*. And in *Cholerica* Latin *cholericus passio*. *passio.*

When there is a forcible pouring out of Blood by vomiting, it is called in Greek *αιμόπτυσις*, and in Latin *vomitio sanguinis*.

Hæmoptysis.

The

Cause of
Ileos.

The Cause of *Ileos*, or *Iliaca passio*, is an excrementitious viscous matter that doth adhere unto the Gut called *Ileo*; which in time is coagulated into a very hard substance, almost in the form of Bullets; (of which I have had large experience) whence all passage through for the excrements by siege is stopt, and anon their regress and ascent to the Stomach follows, with a miserable vomiting of them.

The Rupture of the *Peritonæum* may be also the cause of this grievous disease, especially if it be so great, that not onely the small Guts, but the great ones also fall through the lacerated hole, either by reason of their weight, or else by the perpetual approaching of what is contain'd in them, which renders them incapable to be reduc'd, or put back through the same hole; whence the excrements, (having not passage downwards) are more and more hardned to that degree, that they can hardly be dissolv'd, so that a hard and unsupperable Tumour doth soon follow, which hinders the reflux of blood, and causeth an inflammation, and consequently a gangrene of the Guts, attended with a violent vomiting of the excrements, 'till death do put a period to the Patient's misery.

These evils are often encreas'd by fermentations too hot apply'd, as also by a posterous

posterior and strong rubbing of the swell'd part, and violence us'd to repell the Guts.

The immediate causes of the cholerick passion, are sharp, putrid, cholerick humours collected in the Stomach and Bowels, because of external errors committed in diet, or by the taking of poison uncorrected, which doth immediately disturb and corrupt all the humours. *Causes of the cholerick passion.*

The cause of vomiting blood, is to be deduced (most commonly) from the *Pancreas*, by reason of some vessel open'd by its over sharp juice, caused by a vitious effervescency with Choler, from whence most of it is driven up to the Stomach to be vomited out; whilst some of it may descend downward to be voided by stool. *Causes of vomiting Blood.*

This distemper may also be caused by blood flowing out of the vessels of the Stomach or Guts, either broken by vehement Coughing, or corroded by sharp humours.

1. If vomiting be from repletion, or be critical, 'tis a good benefit of nature, and therefore must not be stopped: but if it be symptomatical, 'tis an ill sign, especially if it be caused by inflammation of the Stomach, or adjacent parts, or by poison taken. *Progn.*

2. If the cause of *Ileos*, be from excrements indurated in the Gut *Ileon*, it may be cur'd, if taken in time; but if it be from a Rupture of the *Peritonæum*, 'tis dangerous,

M

and

and for the most part mortal, especially if there be inflammation and Tumour of the Guts, &c.

3. If the sick vomit blood, 'tis dangerous; neither is the cholerick passion without danger.

Cure.

The Cure of this manifold vomiting, may be performed diversly, according to the variety of each cause.

If vomiting be rais'd too much by an Emetick, or any other nauseous thing taken it may be repress'd by this aromattick Opiate or one like it.

*Cordial
Opiate.*

Take of Mint-water, four ounces; Tincture of Cinamon, half an ounce; Syrups of Mint, Erratick Poppies, of each six drachms; *Laudanum opiatum* six grains; Spirit of Nitre twenty drops; mix it.

Let the sick take a spoonfull of this every quarter of an hour, till the vomiting ceaseth.

If a Catarrh be the cause of vomiting look for the cure in its proper Chapter.

*Cure of
Cholerick
passion.*

If the cholerick passion be caused by poison, or plentifulness of cholerick humours in the Stomach, &c. then nothing hinders but that a gentle Antimonial Emetick may be given, to which may be added those things which will temper the too great effervescency of the aforesaid humours. For example.

Take

Take of the infusion of *Crocus Metallorum*, *Vomit.*
Mint-water, of each six drachms; Cinamon-
water, two drachms; Syrup of Erratick
Poppies, half an ounce; *Laudanum opiatum*,
two grains; mix it.

After the evacuation of the peccant hu-
mours upward, and downward, an Opiate
may be profitably used; because it will not
only temper the Acrimony of Choler,
but assuage the acid juice, and stupefie the
outward sense, and procure rest, which
will be very gratefull to the sick.

Take the waters of Fennel, Plantain, Mint, *Cordial*
Purslain, of each two ounces; Cinamon- *Opiate.*
water, Syrups of Myrtles, Purslain, white
Poppies, of each one ounce; *Confect. de Hya-*
cintho, *Diascordium*, Venice-treacle, of each
two drachms; *Laudanum opiat.* eight grains;
Spirit of Niter twenty drops; mix it.

Let the sick take two Spoonfulls of it of-
ten, which will conduce to amend the faulti-
ness of any humours, whether acrimonious,
salt or sour; for in the disease of *Cholera*, it
will powerfully assuage the too much effe-
vescency that is raised in the small Gut,
staying the fierce motion of the troubled hu-
mours.

A bloody vomiting requireth speedy help, *Cure of*
whence soever the blood cometh. *bloody vo-*
miting.

The following Astringent medicine will
wonderfully conduce to the cure.

M 2

Take

Astringent Julep.

Take the waters of Plantain, Comfrey, of each three ounces; Cinamon-water, distill'd Vinegar, of each an ounce and half; Syrups of Mirtles, Quinces, of each one ounce; Powder of Dragons-bloud half an drachm; *Laudanum opiatum* six grains; mix it.

The sick may take two or three Spoonfulls of this Astringent Julep every hour, with good success, for it will cure the most ruptions of Vessels, and stop the flux of bloud beyond expectation.

After Vomiting is suppress'd, if the Patient be troubled with belching of wind, &c. in this case, the following exemplary mixture may bear the praise; for it doth not onely conduce to curb and discuss wind, remaining as well in the Stomach, as Guts; but it doth temper and correct both Phlegm and Choler, and hinder wind in its rise, and will dissipate it, when it is bred.

Carminative Julep.

Take the waters of Mint, Fennel, of each four ounces; the Carminative water of *Syllivius*, Syrup of Mint, of each two ounces; Spirit of Niter twenty drops; Chymical Oil of Mace ten drops; *Laudanum opiatum* ten grains; mix it.

Let this be taken by Spoonfulls, often or more slowly, as pains or stretchings do more or less urge.

If bloud be thought or feared to be clotted in the cavity of the Guts; to dissolve it

it, you may add to the above mentioned Carminative Julep, *pul. ocul. Cancror. Antimon. Diaphoret. Sperma Cæti*, of each one drachm.

The voiding of matter by vomiting and stool, is not to be staid, but mildly promoted, seeing it is wholly unnatural, and hurtfull to the Body : but its new rise is to be hindred as much as may be, seeing it is bred of blood, which is the fuel of our vital fire, and the sustenance of all parts of the Body.

Among all the medicines that move or promote the voiding of matter, and hinder the continual breeding of it, out of corrupt blood ; I prefer and commend Antimonials, rightly prepar'd ; as well Emeticks, as other preparations of it, as *Antimonium Diaphoretic.* and above all, a Balsam made artificially of its flowers, which will powerfully conduce to alter and correct the harms befalling the Body by matter, and hinder the new producing of it.

Also Balsam of Sulphur with Oil of Anise-seed is excellent to cleanse and consolidate any inward Ulcer ; if two or three drops of it be taken often in a day in any pleasant healing vehicle.

In all preternatural vomitings keep the Belly open, so that the sick may have (at least) every day a stool, either by Nature or Art ; and let the peccant humours remain

ning be emptied out by siege, with these or the like Pills.

*Purging
Pills.*

Take *Extract. Rudii* half a drachm ; Resin of Jallop , Salt of Wormwood , Tartar vitriolated, of each ten grains ; Oil of Cinnamon three drops ; mix it for two doses , to be taken in the morning.

*Cure of
Iliaca
passio.*

The cure of *Ileos* , or *Iliaca passio*, may (for the most part) be performed by the aforesaid medicines.

But for the sake of young Practitioners, I shall add some few directions for the cure of this lamentable contracted motion.

Wherefore to appease the troublesome irritation of the Guts, let fat Broths be often taken in at the Mouth, and also injected into the Fundament as a Clyster ; but if an emollient Clyster can conveniently be made, let the following be prepared and often used, the Decoction of which may be also taken at the Mouth, with a few drops of Oil of Anise-feed.

Clyster.

Take the Roots of Marsh-mallows two ounces ; of Mallows, Marsh-mallows, Mullein , of each two handfulls ; the Seeds of Anise, Sweet-fennel, Coriander, Flax, Fæ-nugreek, of each two ounces ; let them be cleansed, bruised and boiled in a quart of Spring-water till half be consumed , then strain it, and add oil of white Lillies, the Fat of a Hen, of each one ounce ; mix it for a Clyster.

Of

Of which ingredients you may also make Fomentations and Cataplasms to be applied to the region of the Navel, moderately hot, adding Swines or Goats dung to the Pul-
tels.

The following Emulsion will conduce not onely to allay the irritation, and temper the sharp humours, but will make the passages slippery, and (by degrees) moisten the hard Excrements contained in the small Gut, and in the mean time, will mildly procure rest, and stop vomiting.

Take of sweet Almonds blanched, white *Emulsion*
Poppy-seeds, of each two ounces; French-
barley boiled four ounces; the waters of
Fennel, Plantain, Roses, of each half a pint;
Barley-water a pint, let it be made an Emul-
sion; to which add Syrup of Violets three
ounces; *confectio Alkermes de Hyacintho*, of
each two drachms; *Laudanum* twenty grains;
Spirit of Niter forty drops; mix it.

Let the sick take three Spoonfulls of it of-
ten.

In this grievous Disease, nothing is to be neglected, either outward, or inward, that may procure ease to the Patient.

The intrails of Animals, as sheep, &c. ap-
plied very warm in hot cloaths, and often
repeated, are very effectual.

Also *Ventoses* applied to the Navel have
prov'd succcessfull; after which let a little Ci-

vet wrapt in Cotten be put to the Navel, and upon it apply a Plaster *e Cymino*, or *Sylvius's* Carminative Plaster; or else let the aforementioned Pultes be applied warm.

Golden bullets swallowed are excellent, but for want of them, leaden bullets may serve.

Some give great Pills of Antimony; and crude Mercury or Quick-silver well depurated is also highly commended, to be given to three pound at a time, and walk or ride after it, to agitate the Body; but before you give either of them let the sick take an ounce of oil of sweet Almonds or Sallet oil, and likewise after it: and be sure that no acid thing be given after the Quick-silver till it be evacuated, lest it coagulate the Mercury, and hurry the Patient to the grave.

C H A P. VII.

Of pain in the Stomach, and of various pains of the Guts, as Cholick, &c.

TH E pains of the Stomach may be distinguish'd or divided into two sorts, *viz.* of the upper and lower orifice.

If the upper orifice of the Stomach, (which is of exquisite sense, by reason of the intertexture of Nerves with which it is wonderfully furnish'd from the *vaga sexta*, whereof branches are also communicated to the Heart) be affected, it is called in Greek *καρδιαλγία*, vel *καρδιωγμός*, ex *καρδία*, Cor.

It is also called in Latin *Cardiacus dolor*, *cui os Ventriculi dolet*, & *per consensum cordis*, ergo *vocatur affectio Cordis*, seu *oris ventriculi*. For the Mouth, or upper orifice of the Stomach being primarily affected, the Heart suffers by consent.

If the lower orifice, called *Pylorus*, be affected, it is called *dolor seu colica ventriculi*; especially if it come of wind.

The pains of the Guts may also be distinguish'd, because one while the small guts, and other whiles the thick guts are griev'd.

As often as the upper part of the small gut, (nearest the Stomach,) is pain'd, because that part of the gut is over the right Region of the Livers, it maketh the Patient (and sometimes the Physician) think that the pain is in them.

But if that part of the small gut which riseth up from the Loins and Mesenterie, (Towards the left *Hypochondrium*) be afflicted with rendings and distensions, with a notable hardness, this is attributed to the Spleen, even by some Physicians, although without any solid reason;

son ; when indeed this distending pain is altogether Hypochondriacal.

If the pain be in the Gut *Ileon*, it is thence called *Iliaca Passio*, which hath been already treated of.

Whatsoever pain is rais'd in the Gut *Colon*, may be called *Colica Passio*.

These may be distinguish'd from one another, chiefly from the situation of either Gut.

For the Gut *Ileon* is for the most part contorted hither and thither, up and down about the region of the Navel, and from thence a little upward ; but the *Colon* from the Navel downward, the pain of the Cholick generally pressing to the bottom of the Belly, as well as to each side, and the Back, &c. according as the Gut is writhed which is almost in the manner of a Roman S. being roll'd to the Navel, and from thence with a remarkable winding through the middle of the Belly, it is writh'd to the left kidney, and groin, and so down to the *Os sacrum*, and bladder, and ends in the right Gut ; whence the pain rising in the circuit and circumference of the Belly below the Navel may truly be called Cholical.

Cholica
Passio.

Sometimes there is a hot distending pain with pulsation and inflammation in the latter part of the thick Guts called *Rectum* ; and this is either with a troublesome rending,
as

as in the internal or blind Hemorrhoids ; or else it is a corroding pain, accompani'd with more or less itching, perpetually provoking to siege as in the *Tenesmus*, which oft times *Tenesmus* follow a Dyfentery or bloody flux.

In these various pains of the Guts, there *Signs.* is one while a hot burning with pulsation, and other whiles a cold chilness seemeth to be fixt ; pricking, and (as it were) boring the bowels ; sometimes there is a distension of the bowels, pressing them with a sense of weight, wonderfully writhing and contorting them with such a tearing corroding pain, that the sick cannot give an explanation of the grief, and misery which they endure.

The causes are either external, or internal. *Causes.*

The external are wounds or contusions, caused by external violence.

The internal causes are divers ; sometimes Worms may be the cause.

But a burning pain is produced either by an obstruction of the Capillary veins of the Stomach or Guts, by which the blood is forc'd to stand still in the vessels till at length (after a great distension) the vessels burst, and the blood is effus'd, which breedeth an inflammation, and a manifest pulsation about the part affected, by which it may be distinguish'd from any other Kind.

But

But for the most part, a burning and corroding pain riseth from Choler too fat, powerfully and vitiously raising an effervescency with the juice of the *Pancreas* too acid; as experience teacheth in outward things; for if you pour Spirit of Vitriol to oil of Turpentine, it will presently raise an effervescency join'd with a notable heat and burning.

This burning pain is chiefly felt in the region of the Loins, because there is the conflux of Choler, and the juice of the *Pancreas*; and from thence ariseth vitious sharp vapours, which produce griping pains of the Stomach, and pricking pains in the Guts, as also other wandring pains therein.

If the pain be chill and cold, it is caus'd from the juice of the *Pancreas* very acid and sharp; which raiseth a vitious effervescency with Choler (not oily) and phlegm together, as we may observe, if we mix Spirit of Vitriol with any volatile Salt not oily, how it will raise an effervescency, coupled with a notable Chilness, and Coldness onely sensible; hence we may conclude, that the operation of the acid Spirit in producing cold, is much promoted by phlegm.

Cause of
the Co-
lick.

The cause of the Colick is over viscous phlegm, mixed with Choler, peccant both in its Saltish acrimony, and volatile oiliness; by which the viscous phlegm is rarifi'd into Wind; and if the excrements are contain'd beyond

beyond their course, they harden, and adhere to the Gut, whereby the natural ferment is vitiated, and the windy blasts are more and more rarifi'd, and being shut up and remaining in the Cavity of the Gut *Colon*, it causeth a violent distension and contraction of it.

But if the aforesaid humours be mixt with the juice of the *Pancreas* over sharp, acid and harsh; then there is a wonderfull sense of contortion in the part affected, urging and writhing from place to place, according to the winding or rolling of the Gut.

If this wind pierceth through the Guts, ^{Observation.} into the Cavity of the Belly, it expandeth the *Peritonæum*, and so inflateth the whole *Abdomen*, and causeth a Tympany. ^{Tympany.}

These Distempers are all dangerous, and ^{Progn.} sometimes mortal, especially if a violent Fever be complicated with them.

We must vary the cure according to the ^{Cure.} diversity of the causes.

A burning corroding pain may be cur'd, by tempering too fat *Choler* with Acids, as Spirit of Niter, &c. being mixt with Opiates. For example.

Take the Waters of Fennel, Fumitory, ^{Julep.} Sorrel, Succory, of each three ounces; Cinamon-water, distill'd Vinegar, Syrups of Violets and white Poppies, of each two ounces;

ces; *Laudanum opiatum* ten grains; Spirit of Niter twenty drops; mix it.

Let the sick often take a Spoonfull of this Julep, till the heat and pain be diminished, and sleep be procured.

The following Emulsion is also profitable, and therefore may sometimes be given for a change.

Emulsion. Take the four greater cold Seeds, white Poppy-seeds, of each one ounce; French Barley boiled four ounces; with two quarts of Barley water; let it be made an Emulsion; and add to it Syrups of Violets, and white Poppies, of each two ounces; Salt *prunella* half an ounce, Spirit of Niter thirty drops; mix it, and give four Spoonfulls every two or three hours.

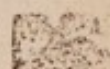
If Choler be too plentiful, let it be educ'd with this or the like mild Cholagogue.

*Purging
Potion.*

Take Damask-rose water two ounces; *Manna*, *Diaphænicon*, Electuary of the juice of Roses, of each two drachms; Tartar Vitriolated ten grains; mix it, and take it in the morning.

The Cholagogue Electuary of *Sylvius* is also excellent, of which you shall have the receipt at the latter end of the Book.

Chilness and cold pains may be cur'd by tempering the over sharp acidity of the juice of the *Pancreas*.



Lixivial Salts both fixt and volatile are excellent in this Case, as also any Aromatick Spirit of wine, Treacle water, &c. with which may be mix'd Coral, Pearl, Crabs-eyes, *Antimon.* *Diaphoret.* &c. and let the body be compos'd to sweat.

The following forms may serve for example.

Take the waters of Treacle, Fennel, Syrup of the juice of *Carduus*, of each half an ounce; powder of Crabs-eyes, Antimony Diaphoretick, Salt of Wormwood, of each ten grains; mix it, and give it the sick to cause sweat. *Cordial Diaphoretick.*

You may also give some of this Cordial Julep, to uphold the Spirits when they sweat.

Take of Tincture of Cinamon, the Carminative Spirit of *Sylvius*, of each half an ounce; the waters of Mint, Baum, of each two ounces; Syrups of the juice of Oranges, Clove-gilliflowers of each one ounce; *Laudanum opiat.* four grains; Oil of Cloves six drops; mix it, and give two or three spoonfulls of it often. *Cordial Julep.*

Let *Sylvius's* Carminative Plaster be spread on Leather, and applied to the region of the Stomach and Navel.

As for the cure of the Cholick, let an Emmollient Clyster (which discusseth wind) be given often, at least twice in a day. *Cure of the Cholick.*

Take

Clyster.

Take the roots of Marsh-mallows one ounce; Pellitory of the Wall, Mallows, Marsh-mallows, the Flowers of Melilot; Chamomel, of each two handfulls; the Seeds of Anise, sweet Fennel, Dill, the Berries of Bays and Juniper, of each one ounce; let them be cleansed, bruised and boiled in two quarts of Whey till half of it be consumed; then strain it, and add Electuary *Diaprunum*, *Cariocostinum*, *Benedicta laxativa*, of each half an ounce; Oils of Dill, Chamomel, Roses, of each six drachms; Oil of Harts-horn ten drops; mix it for two Clysters.

The smoak of Tobacco may be blown into the Clyster-bladder, and given with it, with good success.

Besides, a Clyster may be made of Canary wine, or warm Cows Milk, and a little Honey, or *Mallossus*, and given sometimes to soften the hard excrements, and to dissolve those that are too viscous, whereby they may be the easier evacuated, and also Wind invited to an easie outlet.

To drink the Decoction before prescrib'd, will much conduce to ease the sick; also of the same ingredients, you may make fomentations and Cataplasms,

But if the Patient do not care for the trouble of such medicines; you may anoint the Belly with this ointment.

Take

Take Ointments of Marsh-mallows, *Mar-* *Ointment.*
tium, Oils of Capers, white Lillies, of each
one ounce; Oil of Bricks half an ounce;
mix it.

After which apply a large Plaster of *Sylvi-* *Empl.*
us's Carminative *Empl.* to the Belly.

The following Julep taken often by spoon-
fulls will much conduce to ease the pain,
and discuss the wind.

Take the Waters of Mint, Scurvigrafs, Fen- *Carmina-*
nel, Lovage, Penny-royal, of each one ounce; *tive Julep.*
the carminative Spirit of *Sylvius*, Tinctures
of Cinamon and Castor, of each half an
ounce; Syrups of Mint, Fennel and Mirtles,
of each six drachms; Oil of Mace distill'd
ten drops; Spirits of Harts-horn and Niter,
of each twenty drops; *Laudanum opiatum*
ten grains; mix it for a Julep.

The Oil of Harts-horn is a very Potent,
though ungratefull remedy in this disease.

Also the Balsam of Sulphur made with
Oil of Anise-feed, Amber, or Juniper is ex-
cellent in vanquishing this rebellious dis-
temper.

After the violence of pain is abated, you
may purge the Body with this following
Decoction.

Take of *Guaiacum* four ounces; Roots of *Purging*
China, Sassafras, Lovage, of each one ounce; *Decoction.*
Seeds of Anise, sweet Fennel, Berries of Bays
and Juniper, of each two drachms; let
N them

them be cleansed, bruised and boiled in two quarts of Fountain-water till half be consumed, strain it, and add of the best *Manna*, Syrup of Succory with Rhubarb, of each four ounces; Cinamon-water two ounces; Spirit of Niter two drachms; mix it, and take two ounces of it every Morning and Evening.

The following Pills with Gums will be also very usefull, and potent to educe the viscous Phlegm, &c.

*Purging
Pills.*

Take *Galbanum* prepar'd with Vinegar of Squills two drachms; Resins of Jallop and Scammony, Powders of Castor, Mastick, Mirrh, Vitriol of Mars calcin'd to whiteness, of each half a drachm; Saffron ten grains; Powder of Troches, Alhandal two Scruples; Oils of Harts-horn, Cloves, of each ten drops; beat them all into a Mass for Pills.

Let the sick take three or four of these Pills in the morning fasting, which will kindly expell the vitious humours.

After which let them take some of the aforesaid Julep to procure rest and ease. Oily volatile Salts, and Spirit of Niter are excellent, not onely to correct Choler, and other peccant humours, but do potently discuss wind.

C H A P. VIII.

Of the Worms.

WORMS may be generated in all parts of the Body; those which are bred in Ulcers, may more fitly be called Maggots, in Latin *termetes*; but I shall onely treat of those which are bred in the internal parts of the Body.

Every man living in all places, and climes, doth more or less suffer by the frequent generation of these little intestine Enemies; especially the weaker state of Man, as Infants, and the female Sex; whose ferment, or digestive heat being not sufficiently master of their great moisture; part of it is turned into putrefaction, which corrupteth the humours.

Wherefore it is no wonder that active Nature (being never at rest) by the quickning animating heat, which causeth Concoction, doth frequently generate Worms either in the Stomach or Guts, according to the various occurrences of matter, and seminal dispositions.

There are three or four kinds of these inbred disturbers, which we may take notice of.

Teretes.

The first are called in Latin *Teretes*, a *terendo*, *quod quasi terendo rotundum sit*, vel ἐκ τερῆιν, i.e. *terebrando*.

They are long and round like Earth-worms but whiter; they are more common than the rest, and are bred in the Guts, but do sometimes get up into the Stomach.

The second are called *lumbrici Latī & longi*, because they are broad and long.

Tænia.

They are also called ταινία, φασκία, & τένια, ἐκ τένω, *tendo*. i.e. *fascia extensa*. Because they are something like a womans Head-band.

This worm is full of joints, and is a native of the *Jejunum*, which is a fit place to nourish these Milk-suckers, or craving Vermine; there being the most supply of milky Juice, by reason of the numerous lacteal Vessels.

Some of these worms have been of an incredible length. *Pliny lib 11. nat. hist. cap. 33.* affirmeth that some have been thirty foot in length.

If you peruse *Schenckiu's* his observations, *lib. 3. pag. 411.* you may reade variety of such Histories.

Ascarides.

The third are called in Greek ἀσκαρίδες, ἀσκαρίζω, *salio*.

In Latin they are called *Vermes exigui intestinorum*, *quod ex lυματι βγύει, è sordibus nascantur*.

They are little and slender; some call them Arse-worms, because they commonly lye

lye in the *Intestinum rectum*, near the Sphincter Muscle.

There is another kind of worms (though seldom seen) in the *Colon*, like the Botts in Horses; they may be called in Latin *Vermi-Vermina. na, ex vertendo, quod rependo torqueant sese, & vertant cum quodam minuto motu. Ex ἔγρω serpo.*

The material cause of all worms is (most commonly) the inconcocted part of the *Chylus* which is produc'd of such nourishment as easily putrifieth in the Stomach; as green fruit, &c. which gives sufficient matter to these intruding Vermine.

This part of the *Chylus* being crude, and unfit for sanguification, is left (undrawn by the lacteal Veins) in the intestines, where it is mixed with pituitous humours, and elaborated by the temperate heat of the guts, which is the efficient cause of such like generations.

The form which lay hid in this matter before, is afterward generated by the temperate heat of the Bowels, and according to the diversity of the latent forms, fundry sorts of worms are bred.

In the aforementioned title of *Schenckius*, you may reade of the stupendious Figures of Worms, set down by learned and famous Men in their Monuments.

The signs of worms are many.

If they be round, there is a pinching or gnaw-
Signs of Teretes.

gnawing pain in the Belly, especially being hungry; also a stinking Breath, a frequent dry Cough, Loathing, and sometimes Vomiting and Looseness, with distention of the Belly, and a symptomatical Fever; the sleep is often disturb'd with horrible Dreams, and starting and gnashing of the Teeth; the Face is pale, the Nose itcheth; wherefore Children that have them, do often rub and pick their Nose.

Signs of
Tænia.

If the long broad worm be in the small guts, the party hath an insatiable Appetite, the Body consumeth, having quick stools after eating, in which there is often a substance like to the Seeds of Cucumbers.

Signs of
Ascarides.

If the small worms called *Ascarides*, be bred in the *intestinum rectum*, there is a painful itching in *Anus* with provocation to stool, in which they often come away.

Signs of
Vermilia.

If the short thick worms like Botts be bred in the *Colon*, there is a wringing troublesome pain, and they often come from the Patient night and day, without any Excrements, or motion to stool.

Progn.

These last mention'd, are of all others the worst, and most difficult to destroy, especially if they continue long, and grow numerous, because they enclose themselves in a *Cystis* or Bladder for shelter, which they run out and in to, as a Coney into her Burrough, whereby they defend themselves from the power

power of those things which are given to kill them.

The broad long worms are also hard to destroy; and if the round ones continue long, and are many, they cause Convulsions, and sometime Epilepsie; and if they come out alive in acute Fevers, it betokeneth great Malignity of the morbifick matter, which they labour to shun.

The *Ascarides* are not dangerous, for they may be easily killed with Clysters.

As for the Curation, it is perform'd by two *Cure.* indications; the first is by killing of them, the second by expelling of them when killed

And here the place or residence of the offending Vermine is to be considered, *viz.* whether it be the Stomach or Bowels; if the Bowels, whether the most external, as the *Rectum*, or more internal, as the *Colon*, *Ileon*, or *Jejunum*; and according to the different seat of such internal offensives of life, we must differently level our remedies, and manner of Cure.

If the Stomach be the residence of these notorious offenders; they may then be killed, and pumped upwards by an Antimonial vomit.

But large worms, which are not natives of the Stomach, but (as is said before) of the *Jejunum*, or other next productive guts,

may be most properly conveyed downwards by the force of Aloetick and Mercurial Medicaments.

And for as much as the passage is tedious for such slow marchers as worms are ; which being but sick it may be with one dose, and loath to be dislodged ; therefore they must be often stimulated to their *exit* (at least five or six days together) by protruding Medicaments, till they be all destroy'd, and evacuated.

The following Pill is excellent.

*Purging
Pills.*

Take *Extract. Rudii, pil. Ruffi*, of each one Scruple ; *Mercur. dulcis* sixteen grains ; Oil of Juniper three drops ; make them into eight Pills.

A young Child may take a small Pill of this every day, and those that are adult, three or four of them, for five or six days, till all the Vermine are kill'd and ejected.

And to render the whole Region of the Bowels an uneasie residence to such unwelcome guests, an Aloetick Plaster applied to the Navel is never to be omitted ; and farther to specificate the same, and all other Medicines, either internally exhibited, or externally applied ; I advise you to mix some of the Powder of the ejected worms (of what kind soever) with them, which you will find most effectual to destroy the living Vermine.

Also

Also all medicaments which partake of mercurial irradiation are destructive to Worms where-e'er they are.

Our common Quicksilver, if boiled an hour or two in fair Water, renders the whole (without communication of taste or scent, and also without any loss of weight) a certain destroyer of Worms in humane Bodies; which may be either given at the Mouth, or sweetned with Sugar, and given as a Clyster; after which give two or three doses of the aforesaid Pills to expell the dead Vermine, and verminous matter.

C H A P. IX.

Of a Looseness, or flux of the Belly.

AS often as the expulsion of what is contain'd in the Guts, happens quicker, oftener, and more plentifully than is natural, it may be called a Looseness; of which there are divers sorts, which may be distinguished according to the different things voided.

1. If Food be evacuated crude and undigested, it is called in Greek *λεντερία*, and in Latin also *Lienteria*, i. e. *levitas intestinum*.

2. If

2. If the Food be fermented in the Stomach, and the Chyle passeth into the Guts, and the nutriment of the Chyle be not there separated from the Excrement, but is voided whitish like a Pulstess, much like the Excrements of those that have the Jaundice, it may be called in Greek *κοιλιακή*, and in Latin *Coeliaca*. *Cæliaca, i. e. alvinus, vel ventralis dispositio*; of which there is another kind, which for distinction sake may be named the Chyle-like Looseness; wherein the Food is both fermented, and severed into Chyle and Excrements, and yet are voided confusedly together.

3. If not onely Food, but waterish and cholerick humours are often and plentifully voided, it is called in Greek *διάρροια, ἢ διάρρεια* *fluor*.

It may be called in English a Cholerick Looseness.

There are divers other kinds of Looseness, which may be called *Diarrhæa*; for if thick and viscous Phlegmatick humours are frequently and plentifully voided, it may thence be call'd a Phlegmatick *Diarrhæa*; if the humours be serous, it is a serous *Diarrhæa*; if fat and oily Excrements are frequently evacuated, it may thence be nam'd an unctuous *Diarrhæa*, &c.

4. If the dejection be purulent, corrupted, excrementitious matter, together with pure Bloud, it may then be called in Greek *δυσεντερία*

Dysentery.

τεία, ἀδύς, quod hic non tam difficultatem quam detrimentum notat, ἡ ἑντερον intestinum, ἀπὸ ἐντὸς intus.

It may be called in Latin *Tormina* quod dolore torquentur intestina; In English 'tis vulgarly called the Bloudy-flux.

If there be a perpetual endeavour to go to stool, and nothing but a little mucous purulent matter voided with great pain and straining, it may be called in Greek *τενασμός*, vel *τενέσμος*, ex *τείνω tendo*.

Tenaf-
mus.

In English it may be called a neediness, there being a continual need and desire to go to stool.

This Distemper properly belongeth to a Dysentery, because it doth most commonly follow it, and sometimes with a *procidencia Ani*.

To a Bloudy-flux may also be referred the immoderate flux of the Hemorrhoids, which may be known from a Dysentery, both from the place affected, and the great quantity of the bloody purging.

Hemor-
rhoids.

It is called in Greek *αἱμορροΐς*, ex *αἷμα*, sanguis, ἡ ῥοή, profluvium.

Also the flux of the Liver (if there be any such Disease) may be referred hither, in which the excrementitious liquor ejected, is like the washing of bloody flesh.

This Distemper is called in Greek *ἡπατικοί*, qui ex hepate laborant.

In

In Latin 'tis called *Hepaticus affectus, vel fluxus est serosi et sanguinei humoris per alvum excretio, propter Hepatis imbecilitatem.*

Causes.

The causes of all fluxes of the Belly, are either external, or internal.

The external, are any of the six non-natural things immoderately used, which weakens the Stomach, also the taking of any venomous thing, as Arsnick, Mercury sublimated, &c. which presently destroys the ferment of the Stomach and Guts.

Causes of Lientery.

The internal cause of the Lientery, is weakness of the Stomach, that it cannot retain any food received into it, but striveth to expell it.

Cause of the Jaundice-like flux.

The Jaundice-like flux is caused by the sluggishness of Choler, so that it is not carri'd down to the Guts, to promote the separation of the usefull, from the unusefull parts of the Chyle.

Cause of the Chyle-like flux.

The Chyle-like flux is also caused by the same, so that the straining of Chyle through the spongy crust of the Guts into the Lacteal veins is hindred; the orifices or pores tending to the Lacteal veins, being obstructed by over thick and viscous phlegmatick humours.

Causes of the divers kinds of Diarrhoea.

A Cholerick *Diarrhoea* is caused by oversalt, sharp and serous Choler; together with phlegm, and the juice of the *Pancreas* too watry and fluid.

A phlegmatick *Diarrhæa* is caused by such things as do breed much viscous phlegm.

A ferous *Diarrhæa* ariseth most frequently from Spittle, and the juice of the *Pancreas* too Serous.

A fat, oily, or unctuous looseness, doth follow the over much use of too fat food.

A Dysentery doth proceed either from the thickness of the blood, by reason of over viscous phlegm, being mixed with *Lympha*, or the juice of the *Pancreas* too acid, accompanied with sorrow of mind; whereby the blood doth become too gross for its wonted circulation through the Capillary Vessels of the Guts; wherefore it causeth a great distension of them, till at length they burst, and pour out the blood into the cavity of the Guts.

*Cause of a
Dysentery.*

Or else it may be caused from Choler too salt, sharp and plenteous in the blood, whereby it doth become extravagantly ferous, and eager, through extraordinary fermentation, extremely agitating the humours to a Colliquation, especially where fierceness of anger or great heat of mind do concur; by which the blood is the more rarified to pierce through the tender restraint of the vessels, and doth flow out by indirect ways, sometimes by great loss, to the endangering of life.

*Cause of
Tenas-
mus.*

A *Tenasmus* is caused by a phlegmatick vis-
cous humour, joyned with a sharp acid hu-
mour, which doth fret the Gut about the
siege, stirring up a troublesome Ulcer
there.

*Cause of
Hemor-
rhoids, &c.*

The flux of the Hemorrhoids, and of the
Liver, is to be deduc'd from much serous
matter mixt with the blood, and also relax-
ing the vessels.

The Hemorrhoids are either critical,
which useth to ease the sick; or symptoma-
tical, and much weakneth them.

Signs.

The signs of Fluxes are manifest, from
what hath been said.

Progn.

1. If any looseness continue long, with loa-
thing, 'tis an ill sign, especially if it be with
a Fever.

2. If the small Guts are affected, the pain
is sharper than when it is in the thick Guts.

3. In the Dysentery, if the dejections be
very bloody, or black and fetid, with great
Thirst, Hicket, &c. for the most part they
are mortal signs; but if the erosion be onely
in the internal membrane of the Gut, and
there be no great pain, nor other bad sym-
ptome, there is great hopes of recovery.

Cure.

If the blood and humours be too thin and
serous, they must be corrected, and eva-
cuated.

Chalk, and Harts-horn, (or any other
burnt bone) reduc'd to powder, and given
often

often in a small quantity, doth imbibe and correct watry moisture, and also over much fatness, which may be the cause of a looseness.

After which the peccant humours may be evacuated by stool with Hydragogues, and by sweat and urine, with Sudorificks and Diureticks.

Toasted Rhubarb will satisfie to many indications, seeing that it doth not onely evacuate water together with Choler abounding, but will soon correct the over-loose body, by its mild tartness.

Wherefore when the Bloud doth abound with much ferous liquour, let the sick take this Powder in a little Broth.

Take the Powder of Jallop, Cinamon, of *Purging* each fifteen grains; Powder of Rhubarb *Powder.* toasted half a drachm; mix it

After the operation of it, you may give the following Cordial by spoonfulls.

Take the Waters of Plantain, Comfry, *Cordial* of each two ounces; Cinamon-water half *Julep.* an ounce; Syrup of Mirtles one ounce; *Confectio de Hyacintho, Diascordium,* of each one drachm; *Laudanum opiat.* four grains; mix it.

It will be also convenient sometimes to educe the humours by urine and sweat; for which I commend the following Decoction of *China, &c.*

Take

Decoction. Take the Roots of Burdock, the five opening Roots, *Sarzeparilla*, *Contra yerva*, of each one ounce; *China* four ounces; Gromwell-seeds, Juniper-berries, of each half an ounce; let them be cleansed, bruised and boiled in two quarts of fountain water, 'till half of it be boiled away; then strain it, and add Syrup of the five opening Roots six ounces; Spirit of Niter one drachm; mix it.

Let the sick take a quarter of a pint of this warm, twice or thrice a day, and especially in the morning fasting, which will the easier procure a breathing sweat, or else urine more plentiful, by which the serosity of the blood will be consum'd by little and little, so that the blood and humours will thereby become more pure.

If a Dysentery, or Bloody-flux arise from a sharp humour corroding the Vessels; it may be cur'd by correcting, and tempering the sharp acid humours, and consolidating the Vessels fretted.

The following Powder is excellent to correct and amend the aforesaid acid humours, and stop all fluxes of blood.

Powder. Take the Powders of red Coral, Pearles prepared, white Chalk, Dragons blood, of each half a drachm; mix it for six doses, which may be taken in three spoonfulls of the following Julep, every two or three hours.

Take

Take the Waters of Plantain, Comfry, of *Astringent Julep.* each two ounces; Tincture of Cinamon, Sy-
rups of Quinces, Mirtles, of each one ounce;
Laudanum opiat. ten grains; Oil of Juniper
ten drops; mix it.

If there be an Ulcer in the thick Guts, and
Clysters can come to the part affected, let
the following be often injected, and instruct
the sick to retain them so long as they
can.

Take new Milk wherein Steel hath been *Clyster.*
quenched one pint; Honey of Roses one
ounce; Venice Turpentine half an ounce;
the Yelk of one Egg; Balsam of Sulphur four
drops; mix it.

The following *Bolus* may be sometimes
given in the Morning fasting.

Take the Powder of Rhubarb toasted two *Purging*
Scruples; Nutmeg one scruple; make it in- *Bolus.*
to a *Bolus* with Conserves of red Roses.

And this *Bolus* may be given at Night
going to bed.

Take *Diascordium*, Conserves of red Roses, *Bolus.*
of each half a drachm; *Laudanum opiat.* three *Opiat.*
grains; mix it.

By the frequent use of these choice Me-
dicines, the Ulcer will be cleans'd, the Gripes
asswag'd, and the Consolidation of the ulce-
rated Gut (both in the *Tenasmus* and Dyse-
tery, &c.) will be wonderfully promoted.

But if the Ulcer be in the small Guts, the following vulnerary Decoction will more conduce to the Cure.

Decoction. Take the Roots of Comfrey, Plantain, Knot-grass, of each two ounces; the Tops of Saint John's wort, Sanicle, Germander, red Roses, of each one handfull; Shavings of Hartshorn, Cinamon, of each half an ounce; let them be cleansed, bruised and boiled in three quarts of Fountain-water wherein steel hath been quenched, till half of it be boiled away, then strain it, and add Syrup of dried Roses, Tincture of Cinamon, distill'd Vinegar, Syrup of Marsh-mallows, of each two ounces; mix it, and give the sick four spoonfulls every two or three hours.

If you add two or three drops of Balsam of Sulphur, made with Oil of Anise-seed to every dose of the Decoction, &c. it will be the more effectual both to cleanse and consolidate the Ulcer.

The flux of the Hemorrhoids, if it be symptomatical, and weaken the sick, is then to be hindred, which may be effectually done by the afore-mention'd Medicines.

If much serous Liquour can so dilute the Bloud, and relax the Vessels, that part of it may be carried out of them into the Guts, and produce a Flux like the washing of Flesh, commonly called a Flux of the Liver; it may be cur'd by driving forward the serous Liquour

quour out of the Body, by Sudorificks, and Diureticks; and also by tart strengthening things that repair the hurt of the loosened Vessels.

The Diuretick decoction of *China*, before mention'd, is excellent in this case, to be taken as is there directed.

Also the following Diaphoretick may be sometimes used with good success.

Take the Waters of Treacle, Cinamon, of *Sudorifick* each half an ounce; Plantain-water two ounces; distill'd Vinegar three drachms; *Confectio de Hyacintho*, *Diascordium*, of each one drachm; Powder of Crabs-eyes, Antimony Diaphoretick, of each half a drachm; Syrups of Mirtles, dried Roses, of each six drachms; mix it for two doses.

Also the Powder and astringent Julep prescrib'd in page 192, 193. is excellent to corroborate the loosened Vessels, &c.

Anoint the Belly with the Oil of Quinces, Mirtles, Roses, Wormwood, &c. mixed with *unguent. Comitissæ*; which is also good in all Fluxes of the Belly.

C H A P. X.

Of the dry Belly-ach.

THIS cruciating disease may be called in Greek *σπασμὸς ἐντῆρας*, and in Latin *Spasmus Abdominis, quod sub umbelico est ad Pubem*; and because of the additional Torments, it may be also named *Tormen Abdominis, quod dolore torquetur Abdomen*.

This disease doth also need as well the Name, as the invocation of *Miserere mei Deus*; the sick being in such extreme misery, that 'tiss incredible to all but them that have endur'd it.

The most urgent and exquisite pain under this affect, being in that most tender and sensible part, *viz.* the Belly, may seem to have some Alliance with the Iliack or Colick passion; and indeed they are sometimes its Comitants, but much different from it.

Causes.

The causes of this lamentable Distemper, are either external, or internal.

The external general occasional cause is contracting Cold in the Region of the Belly, &c. which doth cramp not onely the Muscles of the *Abdomen*, but also the tender Fibres of the Intestines, cruciating all the affected parts with obdurate Contractions; which is
more:

more aggravated when the Moon doth come to opposition with the Sun. Which may be also observ'd in all Spasms and convulsive motions, that about the full of the Moon, the tide of such nervous diseases doth rise highest: Especially in those places where the direct aspects of the nocturnal luminary have the most power; which demonstration will evince to be between the Tropicks, which many of our Mariners, (who have sailed that way) can tell by wofull experience.

Another external procuring cause of this grievous disease is a mineral Gas ascending from the Caverns of the Earth, infesting the Air with its poisonous Fumes, whereby not onely the tender fibrous, and nervous parts of the Belly are oft times cramped with Convulsive spasms; but the mineral Fumes being inspired with the Air into the Body, produce most eminent apparent evils, as the Corruption of the Chyle into porraceous and adust Choler, from whence followeth irritating Vomitings, and the Constipation of the Belly, with obdurateness of the excrements, which inflames the Bowels, and entails a Symptomatical fever, with a heavy and slow pulse; and as the pain doth aggravate more and more, there is want of sleep and rest, with other uneasiness, and commotions of Body and Mind; as the Operatours in Chymistry have sometimes experience of

Signs.

(to their cost and trouble) in mineral preparations ; for if a Vessel chance to break, the sharp and acid Vapours, or Gas of the mineral, immediately seifeth the Animal spirits of all that are in the Elaboratory ; by which they are mov'd unequally (against the will) through the Nerves to the Musculous parts, which causeth Convulsive motions, with trembling and shaking of the Limbs, and other accumulated evils.

The like grievous Symptoms (though not so violent) happen to many People that inhabit near the mineral Mines in *Hungaria*, and also in some Places of *England* as *Derbyshire*, &c. Where there are Lead-works, from whence mineral Fumes continually ascend from the separating Oar, which infesteth the Air, and is a great producer of such Convulsive effects.

At the first seifure of this evil, the Muscles of the *Abdomen*, and sometimes those of the Breast and Back, (through contractions) prove hard and painfull, as in our ordinary Cramps ; which Symptoms will evince, that these Vapours are peccant in an acid Acrimony.

The internal Cause, is also four Vapours arising most commonly out of the small Guts ; which the concurring symptoms (consider'd and weigh'd with an attentive mind) will confirm ; for these Vapours being sharp, are
driven

driven forward into the Nerves, and gnawing them with great pain, aggravate and produce this Convulsive spasm.

1. If this miserable and afflictive Distemper hath continu'd to a long durance, it causeth such obstructions in the fibrous and nervous Passages of the Muscles, that thereby Lameness and an Atrophy soon succeeds, increasing the Weakness of all the Members of the Body, till at length it ends in a Paralytical resolution of them. *Progn.*

2. If a pregnant Woman, or a Woman after Abortion, be afflicted with this grievous evil; it is very dangerous, and many times mortal.

As for the Cure, we must endeavour to ease the pain, and strengthen the weak parts with all expedition. *Cure.*

The pain may be eased, and diminish'd as well by internal, as external Anodynes and Narcoticks; to allay the violent Motion of the Animal spirits, and abate the grievous Spasms succeeding.

The following Cordial Diaphoretick opiate is excellent in this Case.

Take the Waters of Fennel, Peony, Treacle, of each one ounce; Syrups of *Stæchas*, Peony, Scurvigrafs, of each half an ounce; Powder of Crabs-eyes, Antimony Diaphoretick, Bezoar-mineral, Salt of Tartar vitriolated, Salt of Amber, volatile Salt of Harts-horn, of each

*Diaphoretick.
Opiate.*

each one scruple; Tincture of Castor two drachms, Spirit of Salt Armoniack, Oil of Cloves, of each four drops; *Laudanum opiat.* six grains; mix it, and give four spoonfulls every three hours.

By the frequent taking of this Volatile and Anodyne Sudorifick, the peccant humours will be temper'd and diminisht, and the inordinate, involuntary, and impetuous motion of the Animal spirits will be reduc'd, and brought to tranquillity, by which the binding Constrictions of the Belly-ach will be the easier remov'd.

Bathing in this distemper, hath been often us'd with admirable success; for by the frequent use thereof, the cutaneous and muscular Fibres will not onely be relax'd from contracted Spasms; but the pores will be also kept open for the constant discharge of transpiring Particles.

A natural Bath, such as is in the City of *Bathe*, is excellent; but when it is not to be had, an artificial Bath may be very usefull for the ends propos'd.

For example.

Bath.

Take of Elder, Dwarf-elder, Vervain, Betony, Chamomel, Bays, Rhue, Time, Hyssop, Ground-pine, Organ, Penny-royal, Sage, sweet Marjoram, of each six handfulls;
Flowers

Flowers of *Stæchas*, Chamomel, Melilot, of each four handfulls ; Roots of Pellitory of Spain, Briony, Master-wort, *Virginia* Snake-root, of each four ounces ; Spicknard, Berries of Juniper and Bays, of each two ounces ; Brimstone six pound ; Salt Niter two pound ; let them be cleansed, bruised and boiled in twenty Gallons of Fountain-water, till a third part be boiled away.

Let the sick be well bathed in it, as often as strength will permit ; and let them sit therein, as long as they may well bear the same.

Then let them be rub'd dry, and remov'd into a Bed ; and let the affected parts be well anointed with this (or the like) fragrant Ointment.

Take Oil of Earth-worms, Ointment of *Ointment*. Orange-flowers, Jessamy, of each three ounces ; Oil of Mace by expression one ounce ; Oil of Juniper, Bricks, of each two drachms ; mix it.

As often as the Body is costive, let a Suppository, or carminative Clyster be administered to make it soluble.

Let the weakned parts be fortifi'd with the aforesaid unguent ; upon which apply a Plaster of *Sylvius's* carminative Emplaster spread on Leather, which you may remove once in twenty four hours, using warm frictions to the pained parts, and apply the Plaster again ; and over it you may apply a Fox-skin drest,

dress, which will keep the parts warm, and conduce to the cure, which course may be continu'd 'till strength be restor'd to the griev'd Limbs.

CHAP. XI.

Of the Yellow Jaundice.

Icterus.

THE Yellow Jaundice is called in Greek *ικτερος*, *ab avicula quæ iktis dicitur, quod ea oculos flavi vel aurei coloris habet.*

It is also called *Icterus* in Latin; it being a spreading of a yellowish Colour over the whole body.

It was the common received opinion of the Ancients, that the chief cause of this Disease, is an obstruction of the Cystick passage to the small Gut, so that Choler is thereby wholly hindred in its natural descent; wherefore it doth ascend to the Liver, and so to the Bloud, with which it is transfer'd to the habit and superficies of the body, where it doth shew it self in its colours.

But it may be manifested from many observations, and experiments, both Anatomical, and Practical; that the Jaundice may be produc'd without an obstruction of the passage of Choler.

Al-

Although I suppose that the Jaundice may probably be raised by an obstruction of the *Meatus Hepaticus*: for if there should be a great stoppage in this Vessel, by any glutinous or lapidescent matter, the Choler that is generated in it may possibly regurgitate (there being no Valves to hinder it) and thereby become mixed with the Blood, by which means it may (in a short time) be conveyed over the whole Body.

But if the *Meatus Cisticus* should be stopped by a small stone, &c. as I have sometimes seen in dissecting Icteric Patients, where I observed that the Excrements were not dyed so yellow as usual: yet it is impossible that there should be any regurgitation of Choler to the Liver out of the Gall, by reason of the three Valves looking from without inwards, which do potently hinder the recourse of it: and although the *Meatus Hepaticus* is without Valves, yet seldom in a Jaundice, is either that passage, or the *Ductus Communis* obstructed, but many times wider, as the most ingenious *Salmon* hath accurately observed.

Wherefore that we may the better judge *Causes* of the true Cause of this Disease, let us first I.
consider that Man's Body abounds with an Animal salt, which doth circulate with the Blood through the whole Body, so that not onely the internal, but superficial parts are replenished therewith. 2. Se-

2. Secondly, it is the Nature of Volatile and Animal salts to sublime, and upon their mixture with other fit Bodies to excite or stir up new appearances of Colours according to the Nature of the Salt; for if a solution of Salt of Tartar be mixt with a solution of sublimate in fair Water, it gives in a moment a reddish, yellowish or orange tawny Colour, although both the solutions be as clear as Cristal, and with Armoniack salts in proper liquors, may be made many Colours to appear.

From whence we may judge, that if the Animal salt of Man's Body become too volatile, or be too much sublimed: which may be done, either by the biting of an enraged Viper, or by the power of poyson, or from the over heating of the Body by violent exercise, or by exceeding sorrow of mind, or great passion, or by excessive drinking of hot liquors, or from burning Feavers; whereby the universal Body comes to be inflamed, the Spirits vehemently agitated, and thereby the Volatile saline Principle to be violently moved out of its Place or Domicil, to the Circumference of the Body; but meeting with the viscous Juice of the *Cutis* is there hindered from flying away; and being dissolved and mixt with the Cutaneous Humidity it excites the Jaundice, whether yellow, black or greenish, according to the Co-
bur

lour of the Poyson which the Patient hath casually taken, or predisposition of the Body to so notable a mutation. Hence it is that many (who have been in perfect health) have been suddenly invaded with this Disease : some by the biting of an enraged Viper, others by running a race, &c. who immediately after were all over as yellow as if they were dipt into the Juice of Saffron; and yet notwithstanding it could not be judged that the Gall-juice was either affected or disaffected in the least measure : for it cannot in reason be supposed, that the Venome or Poyson of the Viper should be so particularly directed to the Gall, to work such an effect in so short a time, as to distribute that viscus heavy Juice so universally over the whole Body : much less can any one imagine, that either the drinking of strong liquours, or any violent exercise, &c. should any ways so operate upon the cholerick Humour, as to volatize it, and so immediately disperse it universally over the whole humane Frame ; for it is impossible that the glutinous Substance of Choler should be dispersed in so short a time to all the superficial Parts of the Body.

Therefore it is more probable, that the volatile Animal salt of the Body, being moved, and carried out of its Domicil, by the extream heat of the internal Parts, and violent

lent Motion of the Spirits, and being mixt and dissolved with the cutaneous Juice (as is before mentioned) doth not onely excite the Jaundice, but may possibly be the Cause of Purple Spots in the Spotted Feaver: as also of many other sudden and great Changes in the Bodies of humane kind.

Progn.

The Jaundice invading a Patient in a Fever (before the seventh, *viz.* the Critical day) is dangerous: if it comes upon an Inflammation of the Liver, or a *Schirrus* and the Cure be not hastned, a Dropsie, Cachexy, or deadly pining will in a short time succeed.

Cure.

If it be critical upon acute Feavers nature effects the Cure: if it be symptomatical, the Cure depends upon the Cure of the Disease by which it comes.

If it be essential from the obstruction of the *Meatus Hepaticus*, the obstruction must be opened.

If sorrow of mind or great passion be the Cause, it ought to be prevented as much as may be, both by Philosophical and Theological reasons about any troublesome matters, and by confirming the mind, whereby the sick may be the better enabled to bear and suffer stoutly any adversity.

This ought to be observed also in all other Diseases.

If

If Ebriety be the cause I commend Sobriety to cure it. *Sublata causa tollitur effectus.*

If the humours be over viscous or glutinous, the following Decoction will not only alter and correct, but mildly educe the peccant humours, by which the Jaundice may in a short time be cured.

Take of Rhubarb, the Roots of Madder, *Decoction* Smallage, the greater Celandine, of each one ounce; the Flowers of Broom one handfull; Hemp-seed two ounces; the Seeds of Anise, Parsley and Columbines, of each half an ounce; Saffron two drachms; white Tartar three drachms; let them be cleansed, bruised and boiled in White-wine, and Fountain water, of each three pints, till the third part be boiled away, then strain it, and add the best Manna, Syrup of Succory with Rhubarb, of each three ounces; mix it.

Let the sick take four spoonfulls of this three times a day, till the viscous phlegm and Choler be sufficiently evacuated, and the natural colour of the body restored.

As oft as the Jaundice is caused by the poison of a Viper, or any other venemous thing whatsoever, you must administer (as soon as possible) a volatile sudorifick to correct and expell the venome.

The following will serve to both indications.

Take

Sudorifick Take the waters of *Carduus*, Fennel, Fumitory, of each two ounces; Treacle-water, Syrups of the juice of *Carduus*, red Poppies, of each one ounce; tincture of Saffron two drachms; Venice-treacle half a drachm; Bezoar-mineral, Antimony diaphoretick, Salt of Harts-horn, of each one scruple; Spirit of Salt-Armoniack six drops; *Laudanum opiatum* six grains; mix it, and give three or four spoonfulls to provoke sweat, and after it breaks forth, give a spoonfull or two, now and then, to promote it.

Also this Decoction, or one like it may be prescrib'd for the Icteric patient, it being both Sudorifick, and Diuretick.

Diuretick Decoction. Take the Roots of *Scorzonera*, Juniper, of each two ounces; Roots of Master-wort, *Sassaphras*, of each half an ounce; Berries of Juniper and Bays, of each one ounce and half; Seeds of Nettles, Hemp and Columbines of each one ounce; shavings of Harts-horn three drachms; the tops of *Carduus*, *Scordium*, Scabious, the lesser Centaury, of each one handfull; let them be cleansed, bruised and boiled in two quarts of Fountain-water, till half of it be boiled away; then strain it, and add Syrup of the juice of *Carduus* four ounces; Treacle-water two ounces; Salt of Tartar vitriolated two drachms; mix it, and give four spoonfulls every two or three hours.

Soap

Soap of any sort, conduceth to the cure of the Jaundice, upon a twofold account, both by reason of its fixt lixivial Salt, and also by reason of its fatness or oil; for the Lixivial Salt doth correct and diminish the over volatileness and spirituousness of the vitiated Choler, and the oil doth blunt the sharpness of the volatile and spirituous Salt ruling in Choler.

The following mixture is very effectual.

Take of Hemp-seed two ounces; Soap two drachms; bruise the seed, and boil it in half a pint of new Milk, till half of it be consumed; then strain it, and add Syrup of Saffron half an ounce; tincture of Saffron two drachms; *Laudanum opiatum* four grains; mix it, and give half of it in the morning fasting, and the remainder at night, going to bed. *Opiate.*

C H A P. XII.

Of a Cachexy.

AN ill Habit of Body is called in Greek *Cachexia*, καχεξία, ex κακός, malus, & ἔξις, habitus.

It may be called in Latin *mala corporis habitudo*.

There

There are many causes of this Distemper, which may be distinguisht according to the diversity of the conjoin'd Symptoms.

It doth accompany all Chronical Diseases, as Dropsies of all kinds, Hypochondriack suffocation, Scurvy, Pox and Gout, &c. for it doth spare none, neither Peer nor Peasant, of any age or sex; but it most frequently seizeth on Women when their monthly terms are suppress'd.

The cause is either external or internal.

The external cause is either bad Diet, a long time receiv'd, or for want of good refreshing Food after sickness, for the Stomach being weak cannot digest coarse Diet, by which the nutriment of the Body doth by degrees become peccant in quality, vitiating the humours, and Blood it self, so that an ill nourishment of the Body doth follow.

The internal cause may be the suppression of the Terms in Women, which is more or less corrupted about the Womb, having not its natural evacuation, from whence the whole mass of Blood is indued with a vitious quality, by which the nourishment of all parts of the Body is deprav'd.

Also Choler, and the juice of the *Pancreas* (which are always confus'd with the Blood) being alike vitious or peccant in quality, do not onely corrupt the separation of usefull and unusefull parts, but by the vitious
effe-

effervescency of these humours manifold flatuous vapours are rais'd, which do not onely increase anxieties about the Midriff, but being carried to the Heart, there follows a pressing pain and palpitation thereof; and in circulating through the Lungs, it causeth a *Dyspnœa*, or difficult breathing; and being thence transferr'd every way throughout the Body, it doth breed a general weariness in all parts.

But when the vitious humours abound together in plenty, then several kinds of the Dropsie at length succeed; if not the universal Body groweth lean by degrees.

From what hath been said, the production of every Cachexie may easily be deduced by a judicious Physician.

The signs are paleness of the Face, shortness of breath, palpitation of the Heart, and often a pressing pain of it, accompanied (for the most part) with a lingering Fever, either continual, or intermitting, or compounded of both, in which the Urine is crude or watry; at length there is a weariness of the universal Body, which in some doth pine and become lean, but in others the Body doth swell, and is turgid. *Signs.*

If this Disease be not helpt in time, it will become by degrees so stubborn and rebellious, that it will puzzle the wisest and most experienced Physicians to cure it; for by the *Progn.*

P long

long continuance thereof, phlegm becometh very tough and glutinous, on which all Chronical, or prolong'd Diseases depend; besides, all the other humours are by degrees vitiated, which incorporate with the Blood, and diminish its effervescency, so that the separation and excretion of the excrementitious parts (to be voided together with Urine) do not follow, from whence many grievous symptoms succeed, which oft proves mortal.

Cure.

The cure of every *Cachexie* will consist in the correction and amendment of the Blood in any way vitiated.

If flegm be tough and glutinous, it must be corrected and evacuated, for which there are variety of choice medicines prescrib'd in the fourth page, of the cure of diseases of the Head; in the use whereof you must persevere for some time, or else the laudable success, and happy wish for cure will be expected in vain.

Any other humours that are peccant in quality (by which the blood is vitiated) must be alter'd and reduc'd to their natural Constitution by selected Medicines, which will amend and empty them out by degrees.

In the interim good Food (which is easie of digestion, and wholesome nourishment) must not be neglected, whereby nature may be cherished, and health by degrees procured.

Those

Those Medicines which are prescrib'd for the Cure of the Dropsie and Scurvy, are proper for this Disease, wherefore I shall forbear prescriptions here.

C H A P. XIII.

Of Dropsies.

THE Dropsie is called in Greek ὕδρωψ, *Hydrops.*
ab ὕδωρ aqua, quod nomen sumpsit ab a-
quoso humore Cutis.

The Ancients have assigned three sorts of Dropsies.

1. The first is called in Greek ἀσκήτης, *ab ἀσκή* *Ascites.*
uter, pellis.

'Tis called in Latin *aqua intercus, ex inter*
& cutis, because the Water is between the Skin and the Flesh.

This is the most proper Dropsie, in which the *Abdomen*, *Secrets*, *Thighs* and *Legs* are affected.

2. The second is called in Greek τυμπανίτης, *quod tumor est ad similitudinem tympani, vel*
tympani sonum referens.

As this is the most rare, so 'tis the most cruel and afflictive.

3. The third is called in Greek ἀνασάρκα, *anà per*, ἡ σαῖξ *caro*, *quod hydrops toto corpore diffusus*; It is also called in Greek λευκοφλεγματία, *ex λευκὸν album*, ἡ φλέγμα, *phlegma vel pituita*; because it is caused of white Phlegm gathered in all parts of the Body.

Some Authours make a difference between *Anasarca*, and *Leucophlegmatia*; that *Anasarca* is caused by a serous humour, and *Leucophlegmatia* by a phlegmatick and more viscous humour; but all Dropsies except Tympanies seem to me, to be little less than a distinction of degrees of one and the same Disease.

Cause.

The Ancients did take the Liver to be the chief part male-affected in these distempers; but *Helmont* (who was happy in a remedy to cure it) doth severely reprove them, and is so bold to tax the whole Schools with the ignorance of Anatomical dissections; he having inspected many Carcasses of dropfical Persons (of whom he makes distinct mention) doth assert the Livers of them all noway vitiated, and therefore he concludes the Liver faultless in dropfical affects; and he derives the Cause of Dropsie to be an obstruction of the Kidneys with the Stone or Gravel; and so the water which should be transferr'd through the Kidneys, to the Bladder, (to be evacuated by pissing) is forced into the Cavity of the *Abdomen*.

But experience teacheth that Dropsies may
be

be caused many ways; wherefore I shall betake my self to a more evident description thereof.

The causes of Dropsies are either external, *Cause.* or internal.

The external Cause is the Constipation of the porous Skin, impeding transpiration, whereby the discharge of sweaty Vapours through the Habit of the Body is lessned and interrupted; hence what moisture is usually carried off by sweating, doth rebound inwards, and condense into an Ichorous water, and is there (by degrees) aggravated and increased, through the hindrance of the necessary transpiration; till at length a great quantity of water is accumulated, and stagnating in the affected parts, in time may work farther alterations on the subjected Bowels.

Matter of fact hath evinced this to me, having cured several Hydropical patients onely by sweating, and external applications.

The internal Cause of the Dropsie, may be over viscous Chyle, or Phlegm of the Guts, coagulated in the lacteal Veins, and causing an obstruction in more or fewer of their Branches, so that the Liquour rising either from the continual Conflux of Choler, the Juice of the *Pancreas*, and the Phlegm of Spittle; or else from Chyle, or from drink plentifully drunk, being stopt and intercepted in its motion, it doth by degrees more

and more distend the Vessels, that at length they burst; and the moisture receiv'd into them, is poured out between the Membranes of the Mesentery, and presently after into the Cavity of the *Abdomen*.

This disease is sometimes suddenly produc'd by much drinking in a burning Fever, join'd with an urgent and permanent Thirst.

After the same manner (though difficult to be known) may a Dropsie of the Breast be caused, *viz.* by an obstruction of the lateral Lymphatick Vessels, by glutinous Phlegm carried together with *Lympha* into the said Vessels, and there coagulated, by which the motion of *Lympha* is hindred, so that the Lymphatick vessels being much distended, by the great quantity of *Lympha* gathered in them, at length they burst, and the *Lympha* piercing (through the *Pleura*) into the Cavity of the Breast, procureth a Dropsie in it.

Cause of
Tympany.

The cause of a Tympany is wind, together with a serous humour piercing through the Guts into the Cavity of the Belly, and being there detained, it is more and more rarified, by which the *Peritonæum* is not onely expanded, but the whole *Abdomen* inflated, and violently distended.

The signs of *Ascites*, are swelling and fluctuation of the Belly, difficult breathing, a dry Cough accompanied sometimes with a symptomatical Fever, and great Thirst. *Signs of Ascites.*

The signs of *Anasarca* are weakness, faintness, and swelling of the whole Body, which being pressed with the Finger, it doth pit, and leave an impression, breathing is also difficult, with a continual Fever. *Signs of Anasarca.*

In a Tympany the Belly is distended, and being struck upon, there is a noise like a little Drum. *Signs of a Tympany.*

1. Every Dropsie is difficult of Curation, especially if it hath been of long continuance. *Progn.*

2. If the Hydropical persons have a good digestion, and void more moisture both by stool and urine, than they either eat or drink, it is a hopefull sign of recovery, & *e contra.*

Dropsies may be cured by strong Hydriacogues, Sudorificks, and Bathing, and sometimes by a *Paracentesis* or boring the Belly. *Cure*

The Best Hydragogues are prepared of Elder, Dwarf-elder, Jallop-roots, *Elaterium*, Gum-gutty, Crystals of Silver, &c. of which you may prepare purging Infusions, Pills, &c. for example.

Take the Roots of Flower-de-luce, Dwarf- Elder, Madder, Liquorish, the five opening *Purging Infusion.*
P 4 Roots,

Roots, of each one ounce. the tops of Saint John's wort, Centaury the less, Agrimony, the best Senna, of each one handfull ; the Barks of Capers, Ash, Tamarisk, Cinamon, of each six drachms ; Flowers of Beans, Elder, Dwarf-elder, Broom, of each half a handfull ; seeds of sweet Fennel, Parsley, Gromwell, Juniper-Berries, of each one ounce and half ; Cloves, Salt of Tartar, of each half an ounce ; let them be cleansed, bruised and infused in two quarts of White-wine, for two or three days ; then strain it, and add Syrup of Succory with Rhubarb, six ounces ; mix it, and give four ounces of it in the morning fasting.

If any like Pills better, I commend the following.

*Purging
Pills.*

Take the Refins of Jallop, and Scammony, Tartar vitriolated, *Mercur. dulcis*, of each half a drachm ; Oil of Juniper one scruple ; make it into Pills with Venice-Turpentine, of which you may give twenty grains at a time, in the morning fasting.

The following Pills are also very effectual.

Pills.

Take of *Elaterium*, *Gambogia*, Refin of Jallop, of each ten grains ; Oil of Nutmegs six drops ; make it into Pills with Venice-Turpentine for two doses.

The obstructions in the Lacteal veins, or Lymphatick vessels, may be cur'd by Medicines that do powerfully cut, and happily open the said obstructions,

This

This Aromatick Sudorifick may be commended for these intentions.

Take the waters of Treacle, Scurvigrafs, *Sudorifick*, Fennel, of each one ounce; waters of Parsley, Fumitory, of each two ounces; distill'd Vinegar half an ounce; Syrups of the juice of *Carduus*, and the five opening Roots, of each six drachms; Powder of Crabs-eyes, Antimony Diaphoretick, Salt of Amber, Beans, Worm-wood, of each one scruple; Spirits of Salt Armoniack, Niter, of each twenty drops; mix it, and give four spoonfulls of it every two or three hours.

After the Vessels are freed from the noted obstruction by the medicines before-mention'd, or such like; they will be easily consolidated again by conglutinating food, in which you may boyle the Roots of Comfry, Plantain, and *Solomon's Seal*, for the more quick and easie cure.

In a Tympany, the dulcifi'd Spirit of Niter is excellent, being taken in Broth or Sack, three or four times in a day, from six to twelve drops at a time, for it doth correct both Phlegm and Choler, and hinder Wind in its rise, and dissipate it when it is bred.

Also the following exemplary Julep doth curb and discuss Wind, remaining as well in the Stomach as Guts.

Take the Waters of Mint, Fennel, of *Carminative* each five Julep.

each four ounces; the Carminative Spirit of *Sylvius*, Syrup of the juice of Mints, of each two ounces; *Laudanum opiat.* eight grains; Spirit of Niter one drachm; Salt of Amber half a drachm; Chymical Oil of Mace ten drops; mix it, and take three or four spoonfulls every three hours.

You may prepare a Medicinal Wine for the rich, very beneficial in Dropsies.

*Medicinal
Wine.*

Take the Seeds of Anise, Fennel, Caraway, Coriander, Berries of Bays, and Juniper, of each two ounces: Salt of Tartar half an ounce; let them be bruised, and infused in three pints of White-wine, for three days, then strain it, and add Spirit of Niter half an ounce; Salt of Amber two drachms; Syrup of Mint three ounces; mix it, and take four or five spoonfulls of it often.

Sweating is very profitable in all Dropsies, either in Bed, with the forementioned Sudorifick, or in a Bagnio, or Hot-house, by which the water standing beside nature in any part of the Body, will (by degrees) be emptied through the pores of the Skin.

Also it may be necessary, especially in persons more elderly, to use warm Baths. That which is prescrib'd for the cure of the Belly-ach in page 201, 202. is also very profitable in Dropsies; into the which it may be agreeable to descend at evening, before Bed-time, and there to continue so long as the Patient

Patient can well endure without fainting; after which Frications may have their proper use, and great benefit.

And to strengthen the cutaneous Fibres, and restore their true tone, for their better service of the offices of Nature: let the affected parts be anointed with the following fragrant Balsamick Ointment.

Take of Flanders Oil of Bays, Nerve-oil, *Ointment.*
Oil of Earth-worms, of each two ounces;
Oil of Mace by expression, half an ounce;
mix it.

Galen commendeth a Cataplasm of Snails bruised with their shells, and laid upon the Navel.

But a Pulstess prepar'd of the ingredients of the Bath, and applied to the affected parts, will be more effectual to discharge the Ichorous water.

Or you may make a Cataplasm after this manner.

Take the tops of Elder, Dwarf-elder, Ver- *Pulstess.*
vain, Worm-wood, Chamomel, of each two handfulls; Horse-radish-roots four ounces; let them be cleansed, bruised and boiled in two quarts of the juice of Wild-cucumbers, till they are very tender, then strain it, and beat them very well, and add Barley-meal, one pound; and with the same liquor boil it into the consistence of a Pulstess.

Let the Patients diet be drying, and let them

them drink moderately; you may infuse Juniper-berries, Tamarisk and Elicampane-roots in their ordinary drink.

And for the benefit of those Physicians and Chirurgeons, that live in the West-Indies; there groweth (almost every where in moist places) a large Cane, much like the Sugar-cane; the Planters generally call it the dumb Cane, because they that taste it, are presently dumb, and unable to speak for two or three hours; after which the Tongue returns to its former use and volubility without any prejudice.

The reason why this remarkeable Plant doth so affect the Tongue upon the touch of it, is its power of attracting such plenty of moisture into it, as doth distend all the Vessels thereof, and render it immoveable, till the crouded moisture be gradually discharged.

Hence we may conjecture, and indeed experience teacheth, that of this Plant may be prepared diversity of medicines as Cataplasms, Oils, Ointments, &c. Which will be effectual to attract, and easily and kindly discharge the swollen part of the Ichorous water; which may be used for some time after the evacuation of it, the better to prevent a farther accumulation, or return of the Disease.

Likewise may medicines be prepared, (by a skilfull Artist) of this Plant, very effectual to be taken inwardly, not onely against Dropsies, but the Scurvy, Gout, &c.

If these choice medicines are not to be had, and nothing be effected by other means; A harmless *Paracenthesis* may be instituted in the Dropfie of the Breast, or *Abdomen*; provided the Apertion be made by such a little hollow instrument as is describ'd in page 81, 82. of the Cure of the Pleurisie, for by such a small wound, there is no danger to the sick.

But this operation must not be delay'd, lest the humour collected, get an hurtfull Acrimony, and by degrees corrode and corrupt the Membrane, and hence the substance of all the parts contain'd, and so make the Disease incurable.

CHAP. XIV.

C H A P. XIV.

Of the Scurvy, and Hypochondriack Suffocation, commonly called the Fits of the Mother.

THE Scurvy being a Hypochondriack disease, it will not be amiss to treat of them together.

The Scurvy is called in Latin *Scorbutus*; it is a Complication, or Concatenation of Diseases, generated by the Conjunction of divers Causes contributing to a scorbutick Deformity.

The Scurvy is generated, or planted essentially in the vital Principles, or digestive Offices, and therefore it is not discerned by sense, but the effects are distributed throughout the Body, and are augmented more or less, according to the strength and debility of parts, to resist or consent and be depraved.

Hypo-
chondri-
acus.

The Hypochondriack suffocation is called in Greek *ὑποχονδρίακος, καὶ τὸ χόνδρος, vel quod ad Hypochondria pertinet, vel sub cartilagine sita sit.*

It is called by the Latins *Hypochondriaca melancholia.*

The Ancients thought that this was an uterine disease, *in quibus mulieres uteri suffocatione*

catione laborant; and therefore it was called *ὑστερικός*, and in Latin *morbis Hystericus*, vel *Hysterica passio*; and in English 'tis called Fits of the Mother; it being most subject to Women, from the suppression of their monthly Courses.

But because men are also molested with longing, and suffer often both the Sense and Disease of Suffocation, especially when they become Cachectick, or of ill habit of Body: and also they are cured with the same medicines, that Women are cured with, when they are vexed with this distemper, therefore I think this suffocation may be more properly called Hypochondriacal.

It may be called the Mother of the Scurvy, because the vital Principles (in this disease) are seduced to declension and deviation from their rectitude, the digestive offices being all depraved.

The causes of these diseases are either external, or internal. *Causes.*

The external, are sometimes a sedentary studious, and melancholy life, by which the vital Principles do receive much prejudice, decay and fall off from their functions, and become languid and feeble; also the Air being infested with noxious Vapours, is a procuring cause of these distempers; for such Air being drawn into the Body by inspiration, doth commix with the spirits, and debilitate

bilitate and deprave the faculties, from whence Scorbutick and Hypochondriack effects do ensue; and as the Body is perspirable or impervious, these diseases are more or less varied, and remitted in their Symptoms; and therefore the constipation of the pores, prohibiting transpiration, is a partial organical cause of preternatural Spots in the Scurvy, which appear chiefly upon the Thighs and Legs; not from the gravity of the material cause, and ponderous propension of gross matter downwards; but because those parts are more weak in their assimilation, being remote from supply of vital Spirits, therefore they have the first tokens of defection.

The internal Cause is a vitious quality of all the humours, and also of the Animal spirits, which are confus'd with the blood, and communicate their faultiness to it, by which the blood is also vitiated, so that the nourishment of the Body is deprav'd several ways, according to the variety of the quality peccant; in which the colour of the native Skin, and especially of the face languisheth, and is changed pale.

In these diseases, not onely the appetite of food, but its fermentation is also deprav'd; wherefore Anxieties about the Midriff and Hypochondries, and a pressing pain of the Heart will soon follow.

For

For when the food is ill fermented, and driven forward through the small Gut, it is confus'd with the Juice of the *Pancreas* and *Choler*, which are a like vitious, the *Pancreatick* juice being too sharp and acrid, and the *Bile* over thick and salt; from whence the separation of usefull and unusefull parts, is not onely corrupted, but also by the vitious Effervescency of these humours, are rais'd manifold halituous Vapours, which do not onely increase the fore describ'd Anxiety, but being carried to the Heart do breed a Palpitation of it, whence it circulates through the Lungs, and causeth a difficulty of breathing, and thence being driven every way, it causeth a weariness in all parts of the Body; and if an Acrimony of the humours do concur, then it is manifested internally with pain.

The cause of the inordinate effervescency of Bloud, in the Hypochondriack suffocation, is not onely the unequal flowing of *Lympha*, but also of the Liqueur rising out of the threefold humours, vitiously effervescing in the small Gut, from whence vitious Vapours are sent to the right Ventricle of the Heart, and procure a great Confusion, and disturbance in it; hence followeth a notable Palpitation of the Heart, by which sometimes the Effervescency of Bloud seemeth to cease in the right Ventricle for a time, with
Q its

its motion and pulse, and also respiration is taken away to outward sense.

The symptoms and signs of these diseases are very many, yet are never seen to concur in one and the same Body.

The usual signs are pain of the Head, palpitation of the Heart, puffing up of the Stomach, Loathing, Vomiting, Belching, Hiccup, Cough, Tumour and Putrefaction of the Gums, with much spitting; looseness and blackness of the Teeth, and sometimes great pain in them; the breath stinketh, and is sometimes fetched with much difficulty; also Convulsions, Palsie, Gout, Dropsies, and all other obstructions; sometimes the Colick, and trembling and looseness of the Lims, with red purple spots dispersed; also the Pleurisie, pain of the Hypochondries, and also of many of the external parts, as the Neck, Arms, Hands, Thighs, Legs, Feet and Anckles, with laziness, and often faint sweats; there is also sometimes malign Ulcers, dry hard Tubercles, *Erisipelas* and Edematous tumours with many others, which to enumerate, were to comprehend an universal Genus of Atomes, within a very narrow Limitation.

Progn.

1. These diseases (for the most part) are of long continuance, and are seldom cured, and therefore may be called the disgrace of Physicians.

2. If

2. If the Patient hath a continual pain and giddiness of the Head, it doth threaten an Epilepsie, or Apoplexy.

3. The more aged the sick are, the more grievous are the Symptoms, and the more dangerous and difficult to be cured.

4. Vomiting, Flux of the Belly, and Hemorrhoids, if they are moderate, are hopeful signs of recovery.

In some Regions, these diseases are complicated with most other distempers, or at least do easily degenerate into them, by which they are rendred the more difficult of curation.

As for the Cure of these stubborn and rebellious diseases, the sick must observe a good diet, without which Physical means will profit but little; and here we may also observe, that no Aliments, or Medicines (whether altering or purging) will be very profitable, unless specifick Antiscorbuticks be mixed with them. Cure.

The best Antiscorbutick simples, are the Roots of Horse-radish, Butter-bur, Liquorish, Dandelion, *Scorzonera*, *China*, Zedoary, *Angelica*, Elicampane, *Polypodium*, the five opening Roots; the Wood and Bark of *Guaiacum* and *Sassaphras*, the Herbs *Scordium*, Scurvigrafs, Brook-lime, Water-creffes, Sorrel, Rue, Fennel, Golden-rod and Pennyroyal; Fruits of Oranges, Limmons, Pom-
citrons,

citrons, Pomgranates, Apples, &c. Seeds of Mustard, *Angelica*, Radish and Juniper-berries, *cum multis aliis*; of which may be prepared diversity of good medicines both Chymical and Galenical.

The volatile Salts both of Animals, and Vegetables, are excellent to open all obstructions, and temper the humours; Also *Elixir proprietatis*, the Spirit of Salt Armoniack, Horfe-radish and Scurvigrafs, the Spirit of Niter and of Salt dulcified, Salt of Steel, Wormwood, and Tartar, Oil of Juniper, Cloves, and Cinamon, are all Specificke Antifcorbuticks.

The Hypochondriack suffocation having great affinity with the Scurvy, the same medicines are proper for both.

The following Julep is both Diaphoretick, and Diuretick, and very profitable for the sick in these diseases, to be taken two or three days in a week.

Julep.

Take the Waters of Penny-royal, Scurvigrafs, Treacle, Syrup of the juice of Fennel, of each two ounces; Tincture of Castor, half an ounce; Oils of Amber, Mace, and Cloves, of each six drops; Spirit of Salt Armoniack, twenty drops; mix it, and give three spoonfulls every two or three hours.

This Electuary may also be prefer'd.

Electuary.

Take of Conserves of Scurvigrafs, three ounces; *Confectio Alkermes*, half an ounce;

Powder

Powder of Crabs-eyes, two drachms; Flowers of Salt Armoniack, Tarter vitriolated, of each half a drachm; Spirit of Castor one drachm; Oil of Cloves twenty drops; mix it, and give two drachms morning and evening.

After the frequent use of this Electuary, you may purge with this Powder.

Take Powder of Cream of Tartar, half a drachm; Salts of Wormwood, Amber, Scurvigrafs, Refin of Scammony, of each ten grains; mix it for two doses. *Purging Powder.*

If the Patient like Pills better, these may serve. For Example.

Take *Extract. Catholicon, Rudii*, of each ten grains; Refin of Jallop, Agarick, Salt Armoniack, of each six grains; Oils of Amber, Cloves, of each two drops; make it into eight Pills, for two doses.

A Medicinal Wine may be prepar'd very effectual in these distempers.

Take of Water cresses, Brook-lime, Scurvigrafs, Rue, of each one handfull; Roots of *Polypodium*, Jallop, Horse-radish, *Angelica*, Cream of Tartar, of each half an ounce; white Nettle-seed, one ounce; Orange-peel, Cinamon, Salt of Tartar, of each two drachms; let them be cleansed, bruised and infused, in three quarts of White-wine, for two or three days, then strain it, and give four spoonfulls in the morning fasting. *Medicinal Wine.*

In the Hypochondriack suffocation, you

may often hold to the Nostrils, a glass with a narrow mouth, containing the Spirit of Salt Armoniack; for by its sharp smell, the sick for the most part are wont to be rais'd, both from that suffocation, and from the Epilepsie.

If the Gums are putrified, let the mouth be washed with the following Tincture, mixed with some Plantain water, and Syrup of Mulberries.

Tincture.

Take Powder of Gum *Lacca*, one ounce; burnt Alome half an ounce; the small Spirit of Salt Armoniack, one quart; let them digest together 'till it be of a red colour; then filtrate it through brown paper, and keep it for use.

If the sick hath a costive Body, you may administer a Carminative Clyster once or twice a week.

In pains of the Belly and Hypochondries, this linament is effectual.

Linament

Take Oils of Earth-worms, Scurvigrafs, Chamomel, of each one ounce; Oil of Mace by expression half an ounce; mix it with which anoint the parts affected.

This Antiscorbutick water will be very profitable, to be taken two or three spoonfuls at a time, morning and evening.

Water against the Scurvy.

Take the Barks of Ash, and Capers, the Roots of Tamarisk, *Polypodium*, Horse-radish of each three ounces; Water-creffes, Scurvigrafs

grafs, Brook-lime, Sorrel, Centaury the less, Harts tongue, of each four handfulls; Berries of Bays and Juniper, Goose-dung, of each one ounce; the Seeds of Citrons, Mustard, *Carduus benedictus*, Cloves, Cinamon, Nutmegs, Ginger, of each half an ounce; let them be cleansed, bruised and digested, in one Gallon of White-wine, and two quarts of Spirit of wine, being close covered for three days; then distill them with a glass Still according to art, and keep it for your use.

Frictions, Ligatures, Ventoses, Sternutatories, &c. are all profitable to stir up the sick in the Hypochondriack suffocation.

C H A P. XV.

Of the Green-sickness, and Suppression of the Courses.

THE Green-sickness is called in Latin *Icterus*, & *Febris alba*; In English the Virgin's Disease, the White Fever, and the White Jaundice; because in this disease the native colour of the Face is pale.

This disease is caused either from defect of Blood, or it proceedeth from plenty of

crude, viscous, phlegmatick humours, obstructing the veins about the Womb, by which the courses are suppressed; the veins of the Matrix being obstructed, that superfluous Blood which nature hath ordained to be evacuated that way, having not passage, doth return to the greater Vessels, and is circulated with the whole mass of Blood and humours, by which they are in time vitiated, and a *Cachexie* or ill habit of body is thence caused; for the Blood and natural humours, being indued with a vitious quality, the nourishment of all the parts of the body will be deprav'd several ways, according to the variety of the quality peccant; whence likewise not onely the fermentation of Food, but also the Appetite of it is deprav'd; wherefore Anxieties and Palpitation of the Heart, &c. troubleth the sick, as well before as after Food taken in.

This distemper may be also caused by external coldness of the air, &c. and sometimes great fear, and sudden shame may be the cause of the suppression; also aliments, and medicaments that are too astringent taken inwardly.

Signs.

In these diseases the Urine cometh away crude, thick and less colour'd, because the phlegmatick, watry humours abounding, incorporating with the Blood, do diminish the desired effervescency; so that the
separ

separation, much less excretion of the excrementitious parts, to be voided together with Urine, doth not follow.

If the Hypochondries be afflicted, and the veins of the Womb obstructed, there will be great loathing of wholesome Food, and a desire after those things which ought not to be eaten, as Ashes, Salt, Coals, &c. which is called *Pica*, and in Women with Child *Malacia*, of which we have hinted in the Chapter of Hungar Vitiated, page 145, 146.

1. These distempers are sometimes of long continuance, causing much weakness, and oft times barrenness in them that have been so afflicted: and if they do conceive, they bring forth weak and sickly Children, and those that are very melancholy, are in danger of falling into madness, or other grievous affects, as Palpitation of the Heart, Swouning, *Vertigo*, Epilepsie, Apoplexy, &c. Progn.

2. If the obstruction be onely of the vessels of the Womb, and have not been of long continuance, it may be easily cur'd.

3. Bleeding at the Nose, is sometimes beneficial, but if the Bloud doth disburthen itself by the Eyes, Ears, Mouth, or Bladder, it is preposterous, from whence may arise other bad Symptoms.

In the cure of these distempers such medicines are to be selected, which will mildly
(and

(and by degrees) alter, correct and evacuate, tough and glutinous Phlegm, seeing that all prolong'd diseases depend on it, either wholly, or at least in part; for by the frequent use of such medicines, the Bloud and peccant humours will be the easier reduc'd to their natural constitution; especially by the help of good Food, easy of digestion: in the mean while, not neglecting the moderate use of the rest of the nonnatural things.

An obstruction of the Vessels by viscous Phlegm, may be cur'd by the frequent use of such medicines as have power to loosen the peccant humours, and again make them fluid.

All fixt metallick and mineral Sulphurs, and also volatile Salts, prepar'd not onely off several parts of Animals, but also of scorbutick Plants, (such as are the juice of Hedge-mustard, Scurvigrass, Garden and Water-creffes, Dandelion, &c.) conduce before all others, to loosen and dissolve Phlegm coagulated, or Bloud clotter'd, as having an egregious power of dissolving all things coagulated, and conglutinated in humane bodies, and of reducing the same to their wonted fluidity, and moreover to move sweat, which together being mildly promoted, the desired dissolution of the aforesaid viscous humours, &c. will be obtained much easier, and sooner.

An example of such a Sudorifick I have here set down for the sake of young Practitioners.

Take the Waters of Treacle, Dandelion, *Cordial to*
Parsley, Scurvigrafs, Fennel, Syrups of *cause*
Hedge-mustard, white Poppies, of each half *Sweat.*
an ounce; Spirit of Salt Armoniack, Harts-
horn, of each ten drops; *Laudanum opiatum*,
four grains; mix it.

The following is also very effectual.

Take the Waters of Fennel, Hyssop, of
each two ounces; distill'd Vinegar six drachms;
the Carminative-water of *Sylvius* half an
ounce; Syrup of the five opening Roots
one ounce and half; Powder of Crabs-eyes
one drachm; *Sperma Cæti*, Mummy, Anti-
mony Diaphoretick, of each one scruple;
Laudanum opiat. four grains; mix it.

Let the sick often take two spoonfulls of
either of these mixtures, especially in bed, to
promote the power of the medicine, and
to facilitate a sweat; by the help whereof the
mention'd power of the Sudorifick will the
better come to the place of obstruction, and
will attenuate, loosen, and make fluid the mat-
ter obstructing; the whole Mass of Bloud will
also become more fluid and moveable, being
raref'd by the volatile Salt of the medicine.

If the Patient be plethorick, let the *Sa-
phæna* vein be opened, for by opening and
breathing a Vein, the motion and circulation
of

of the Bloud will be the better restor'd; for a larger space being made for the universal Bloud, it will circulate more swiftly and potently.

The phlegmatick viscous humours must be corrected, and evacuated by Phlegmagogues.

The following medicines are of great efficacy.

Powder.

Take of Salts of Mugwort, Ash, Amber, Tartar vitriolated, of each ten grains; Powder of Cream of Tartar, white Sugar-candy, of each half a drachm; mix it, and give it in white Wine in the morning fasting.

The next day you may administer the following Pills.

Purging Pills.

Take of *pil. fœtidæ, ex duobus*, of each half a drachm; Amber, prepar'd Steel, Borax, *Mercur. Dulcis*, of each one scruple; Mirrh, Castor, Saffron, of each twelve grains; Oil of Cloves, Spirit of Salt Armoniack, of each six drops; make it into ten Pills for two doses, which may be taken in the Morning fasting.

If a medicinal Wine be acceptable to the sick, the following or one like it may be used.

Medicinal wine.

Take the Roots of Horse-radish, the five opening Roots, of each one ounce; Savin, Vervain, Penny-royal, Hyssop, Calamint, Mugwort, of each one handfull; *Senna*,
Cina-

Cinamon, sweet Fennel-seeds, Juniper-berries, Orange-peel, Liquorish, of each half an ounce; let them be cleansed, bruised and infused in one Gallon of White-wine for three days, then strain it, and keep it for use.

You may add more wine to the ingredients so long as there is any Aromatick taste.

Four or five spoonfulls of this Wine may be taken two or three times a day, with which you may mix Salt of Tartar vitriolated ten grains; *Elixir proprietatis* six drops.

If you expect a laudable success, you must persevere awhile in the use of these, or such like medicines.

C H A P. XVI.

Of the immoderate menstrual Flux, and the Whites in Women.

THE monthly terms being immoderate, may be called in Latin *mensium fluxus immodicus*.

And the Whites in Women *Albæ mulierum fluxiones*.

The causes of too many Courses are either Cause external, or internal.

The

The external Causes may be by an Ulcer in the Matrix, or some outward Violence, and sometimes by too much Coition.

The internal Causes are either a sharp ferrous humour abounding in the Bloud, increasing its fluidity, or else an over great heat in the Womb, stirring up a more potent, and therefore a swifter rarefaction of Bloud, provoking an expulsion of it, either by breaking, (or some other preternatural opening) of the vessels of the Womb.

The white Flux of the Womb, is an excrementitious humour flowing from it.

This distemper is subject not onely to Women, but sometimes to Maids also.

*Cause of
Whites.*

These humours may be bred in the Womb, either by a cold or hot distemper therein.

The cold doth render it unable to digest its nourishment.

A hot Distemper corrupteth it, hence cometh this excrementitious humour.

Also Abortion, Contusion, Inflammation, Imposthume or Ulcer in the Womb, may weaken and dispose it to breed such humours.

Signs.

The signs that distinguish between this Distemper, and an Ulcer in the Womb, and *Gonorrhæa*, are these.

I. If there be an Ulcer there, the Womb will not admit of Coition, without pain, and the

the matter which floweth from her is strin-
gy, and more digested, and sometimes
bloudy.

2. In the *Gonorrhœa*, the seminal matter
cometh in a small quantity, and seldom, ex-
cept it be gotten by acting with an unclean
Person, then the Urine is sharp, with many
other malignant Symptoms.

All long Hemorrhagies of Bloud are dan- *Progn.*
gerous, especially those of the Womb; If
it be caused by exulceration, and be in elder-
ly Women, 'tis incurable.

The white Flux is not very dangerous,
but is often difficult of curation, especially
in old Women, because they abound with
Phlegm; and 'tis hard to divert the humours
from this Chanel, it being the sink of the
body, through which the superfluous hu-
mours of a healthy Woman are every month
evacuated.

If this distemper continue long, it may
breed great evils, as Barrenness, Falling out
of the Womb, &c.

These diseases may be both cured by the *Cure.*
same medicines.

If the courses have continued too long,
the following mixture will soon stop the
flux of Bloud, and will cure most rup-
tions of vessels.

Take the Waters of Plantain, Comfrey, of *Astrin-*
each three ounces; Cinamon-water, Syrups *gent Julep.*
of

of Mirtles, Quinces, of each one ounce and half; distill'd Vinegar one ounce; red Coral prepar'd one drachm; Dragons Bloud one scruple; *Laudanum opiat.* six grains; mix it, and give three spoonfulls every four hours.

When the flux of Bloud is stopt, you may purge with the following.

Purge.

Take of Manna one ounce; Powder of Rhubarb tosted, Cream of Tartar, of each half a drachm; Resin of Jallop four grains; mix it, and take it in broth.

If the Patient like Pills, I commend the following.

Purging Pills.

Take Refins of Jallop and Scammony, extract of Rhubarb, Agarick, Salt of Amber, Powder of Dragons-bloud, of each ten grains; Oil of Mints six drops; with Syrup of Rhubarb, let it be made into twelve Pills for three doses.

After purging, these Astringents will be profitable.

Astringent Electuary.

Take of Cinamon, the Roots of Bistort, Tormentile, Rhubarb, Seeds of Plantain, Dill, Flowers of red Roses, Balauftins, red Coral, sealed Earth, whitest Amber, Harts-horn, Gumdragon and Arabick, of each two drachms; *Saccharum Saturni*, Dragons-bloud, Salt *Prunella*, of each two scruples; *Laudanum opiat.* Camphire, of each ten grains; let them be all finely powder'd and searced, and with Honey of red Roses, Syrups of Quinces and

Com-

Comfry, of each equal parts ; let it be made into an Electuary according to Art.

Let the sick take the quantity of a Nutmeg of this Electuary, every morning and evening, either upon the point of a knife, or dissolve it in two or three ounces of red Wine, to which you may add a few drops of Tincture of red Coral, and drink it.

This Julep is also of great virtue.

Take the Waters of Comfry, Plantain, ^{Astringent Julep.} Oak-buds, Knot-grass, red Wine, of each four ounces ; in which infuse red Rose-buds, Balauſtins, Flowers of Comfry, Buglofs, of each one handfull, for the ſpace of twenty four hours, then boil it gently for half an hour ; ſtrain it, and add Tincture of red Coral, Syrups of dried Roſes, Comfry and Mirtles, of each two ounces ; Oil of Vitriol twenty drops ; mix it, and take ſix ſpoonfulls every three hours.

Let the Region of the Womb be anointed with this Linament.

Take *Unguent. Comitiffæ*, Oil of Mirtles, *Linament* of each one ounce ; *Saccharum Saturni* one drachm ; Camphire ten grains ; mix it.

After the part is anointed, let this Plaster be applied.

Take the Plaster againſt Ruptures, *Dia-Plaster. palma*, of each one ounce ; the carminative Plaster of *Sylvius* half an ounce ; mix it, and ſpread it on leather, and apply to the region of the Womb.

R

In

Fume.

In the Whites, let this be used for a Fume.
 Take of *Olibanum*, Amber, Cloves, each half a drachm; red Rose-buds, Balau-
 tins, of each two drachms; beat them all to-
 gether into a gross powder; put a little of it
 at a time upon a pan of coles, and let the
 Woman sit over it.

C H A P. XVII.

*Of the Falling Down of the Womb and Funda-
 ment.*

IF the Womb falleth down, it may be
 called in Latin *Procidentia Matricis*. See
 likewise if the Fundament cometh down, it
 is called *Procidentia Ani*.

Cause.

The Causes of these distempers are either
 External or Internal.

The External Causes may be any violent
 exercise, with much striving, also falls on
 blows, on those parts; also bathing in cold
 water, &c.

The Internal Causes are serous and phleg-
 matick humours, a Dysentery with a *Tenaf-
 mus*, the Whites continuing long, a violent
 drawing the Child, or After-birth out of the
 Womb; also much Sneezing or Coughing,
 especially in Child-bed; to conclude, all
 things

things that may cause a Rupture or relaxation of the Ligaments of the Womb, or sphincter Muscle of the *Anus*, may be the cause of these griefs.

In a *Procidentia Ani*, there is always a *Signs.* mucous and purulent dejection, from a phlegmatick, viscous, and sometimes also a sharp acid humour adjoining about the seige, which often causeth a troublesome Ulcer by fretting.

In young people these distempers may be *Progn.* easily cur'd, if they have not continued long, and do not come very far out, and be not ulcerated.

But if there be a Rupture of the Ligaments of the Womb, it is incurable; likewise great pain and inflammation are very difficult; and if either the *Matrix* or *Anus* be Gangrenated it is mortal, without speedy amputation.

You must begin the Cure with removing *Cure.* the symptoms and discharging the Guts of their Excrements, either with Clysters or Lenitives.

Then anoint the part with some astringent Oils, and endeavour to reduce it gently by degrees.

The manner of the reduction every ingenious Artist knows, and therefore needs not any directions.

When the Womb is reduc'd it may be

kept with a Pessary fram'd of Cork as thick as necessary, and cover'd with Wax mixed with a little Castor, and *Affafætida*, which may there continue.

If there be pain and inflammation, lett the part be bathed with this.

Bath.

Take the Flowers of Chamomel, Elder, of each one handfull; Marsh-mallow-roots one ounce; Seeds of Flax and Fœnugreek, of each half an ounce; boil it in two quarts of Milk till half be consumed, then strain it, and add Malaga Wine one pint; mix it.

Let Stuphs be moistned in this and wrung out and applied hot; after which apply a Plaster of *ad herniam* to the lower part of the Belly.

Before you reduce the *Anus*, anoint it with Oil of Mirtles and bestrew it with Powder of *Album Græcum*, or the following.

Powder.

Take of red Roses, Pomgranat-rinds, Cypress-nuts, Mastick, *Crocus Martis*, burnt Lead, of each half an ounce; beat them all into a fine powder.

A Bag quilted with the following astringents, and applied hot to either griev'd part three times a day, will conduce much to keep it up.

For a quilted Bag.

Take of Plantain, Sanicle, Buds of Oak and Medlar, red Rose-buds, Balaustins, of each one handfull; Roots of Comfry, Tormentil, Bistort, Cypress-nuts, Seeds of A-nise

nise, sweet Fennel, of each one ounce ; beat them all into a gross powder.

Inwardly may be given Astringents and Strengtheners, but not in time of the courses ; those prescrib'd against the immoderate flowing of the Terms are good.

C H A P. XVIII.

Of Barrenness.

Barrenness is called in Latin *Sterilitas*. It may be called in English Unfruitfulness, it being an impotency of Conception.

We read in the Scripture that the Women of old did think it a reproach to be Childless ; and therefore when *Elizabeth* had conceived who before was Barren, she said *the Lord hath taken away my reproach among Men* ; as you may read at large in the first Chapter of *Luke's Gospel*.

Very few Women in a Marriage state but desire Children , yea some would give all they have in the world for a Child, and are very impatient if they do not Conceive.

Rachel said to *Jacob* in *Gen. 30 ver. 1. give me Children, or else I dye.*

I will now briefly shew you, what may be the cause of Sterility.

1. First, want of Love between a Man and his Wife, may hinder Conception.

2. Any malignant distemper in the womb, may corrupt the Seed, and be the cause of Barrenness.

Some are of opinion that Witch-craft may be the cause.

But to conclude, the Whites or any moist distemper of the *Matrix*, may be the cause of Barrenness.

Sometimes the cause is in the Man, for if he doth want Sperm, or is unable to erect his Genital by reason of any weakness or distemper in his Secrets; or if he be effeminate and taketh little or no delight in the act of Venery, he is not fit for *Venus School*.

There are some Rules left by the Ancients to try whether a Woman be naturally Barren or no.

Hippocrates adviseth to put a Clove of Garlick or a little *Galbanum* into her Womb, and if her Breath do smell of it, be sure she is fruitfull.

Progn.

If Barrenness be caused by any Disease afflicting either the man or the woman, then there may be hopes of Conception when health is procured; but if it be evil shape of the members in the woman, or the man not fit for *Venus-School*, *patientia est optima virtus*.

Cure.

In the cure, you must endeavour to remove whatsoever

whatsoever hindreth Conception.

Many things are antipathetical to fecundity, as Jet, Glow-worms, Saphires, Smaragds, the *Matrix* of a Goat or Mule, likewise Vinegar, Mints, Watercresses, Beans, &c. all which I advise you to avoid, and make use of those things which have a peculiar virtue to help or cause Conception, and remove Barrenness.

The After-birth of a Woman dried and powdered, and taken often a drachm at a time; also the Stones and Liver of a Bore-pig, the Juice of Sage, the Roots of Satirion and *Eringo* candied, are all good.

There are many medicines prescrib'd in Authours to help Conception.

Quercetanus doth commend this infusion.

Take the *Matrix* of a Hare and the Stones of a Ram prepar'd with Whitewine, of Cinnamon, Ginger, Mace, Cloves, Seeds of Bishops-weed, of each half an ounce; Saffron two drachms; Kernels of Fiftick-nuts one ounce; let them be all bruised and infused in a quart of Muskadel-wine for two or three days; then strain it, and add more Wine to the ingredients for a second infusion.

The following Electuary is also excellent.

Take the Roots of Satirion and *Eringo* candied, of each one ounce; candied Ginger and preserv'd Nutmegs, of each two drachms;

R 4

Ker-

Kernels of Hazle-nuts and Fiftick-nuts, of each half an ounce; Powder of a Bull's-pizle, of Ivory, Seeds of Rocket, Bishops-weed, of each one drachm; *Species Diambrae*, *Diamosc. dulcis*, of each six drachms; *Confectio Alkermes* one ounce and half; with Syrup of the juice of Citrons; make it into an Electuary according to Art.

Let the Woman take the quantity of a Nutmeg of it every night going to bed, and drink a glass of Sack or Muscadel, or of the aforementioned Infusion after it.

If a cold and moist distemper of the Body and Womb, accompanied with the Whites be the cause, look for the cure in its proper Chapter.

If it be caused by Witchcraft, there are some things commended by Authours to be worn about the party against Fascination, viz. the Pizle of a Wolf, a Diamond, a Jacinth-stone, Rue, Squills, Sea-holly, *Sagapenum*, *Amara dulcis*, *Hypericon*, &c.

But above all, let fervent and devout Prayers be put up to the Throne of grace for help; and reject and despise Incantations or Charms, and all other Diabolical means.

C H A P. XIX.

Of Abortion or Miscarriage.

ABortion is called in Latin *Abortus, vel intempestivus fœtus*. Because it is an untimely Birth; the Child being brought forth, either dead or alive before its fit time of deliverance.

This is the worst Symptom, that attends breeding Women.

It may happen from the first Moment of Conception, to the end of the sixth Month; but it is most usual in the end of the third, or the beginning of the fourth Month.

The causes are either external, or internal. *Causes.*

The external Causes are a great excess in things nonnatural, as too great Anger, Fear, and other Passions, or else it may be through defect; for if the Mother undergo Penury or Famine, or lose much Bloud, the Child wanteth Nourishment.

Many times things longed for, and not obtained, kill the Child.

Also strong purging Medicines, that provoke the terms, and all fetid smells, falls, blows, lifting, carrying, dancing, running, riding or any other outward violence, may be the Cause of Abortion.

The

The internal Causes may be the depravedness of the humours, by which the Mass of Bloud becometh vitious; also Acute or Chronick diseases, especially of the Womb; and also violent Coughing, Sneezing, Vomiting, Convulsions and Fluxes of the Belly, may loosen the Ligaments of the Womb, and so cause miscarriage.

Signs.

The signs of Abortion at hand, are great pain about the Loins, and Share-bones, sometimes with shivering; the Breasts growing little and flaggy, the Situation of the Child changed towards the Bottom of the Belly, with a bearing down, and evacuation of Bloud, &c.

Progn.

1. Women who have moist and slippery Wombs are most subject to miscarry, but with little danger, except it be the first Child, and that very big.

2. Much bleeding, with fainting, raving, or Convulsions is for the most part mortal.

Cure.

To prevent Abortion; if there be an evil disposition of the Body, or Womb, you must endeavour to remove it; if the Woman hath a plethorick Body, let a Vein be opened in the Arme, especially in the first six months.

If ill humours abound, purge often with gentle means.

This purging Infusion may serve.

*Purging
Infusion.*

Take of Cinamon, Rhubarb, Anise-feed, of each two drachms; let them be bruised,
and

and infused in four ounces of Plantain-water very hot, for the space of a Night, then strain it, and add Syrup of Succory with Rhubarb, the best *Manna*, of each half an ounce; mix it, and give it in the Morning fasting.

Also the Pills prescrib'd in page 240. may be used in this case.

If the Woman be troubled with a Rheumatick distemper, accompanied with Wind; and if she be pretty strong, you may sweat her gently sometimes with this or such like Cordial Diaphoretick.

Take the Waters of Treacle, *Carduus*, Fennel, of each one ounce; Cinamon-water two drachms; Syrups of the Juice of *Carduus*, Coral, of each half an ounce; *Confectio de Hyacintho* half a drachm; Spirit of Niter six drops; Oil of Cinamon two drops; *Laudanum opiatum* three grains; mix it, and give to provoke sweat. *Cordial to cause sweat.*

Let the Womb be strengthened with Cordial Astringents: Those prescrib'd in page 239. 240. are excellent.

C H A P. XX.

Of hard Travel in Child-birth.

HARD labour may be called in Latin *partus, vel enixus laboriosus; quod ipse nitendi & pariendi actus.*

The time of a natural Birth ought to be accomplished in the space of twenty four hours; if the Womans travel continue longer time with vehement pains and dangerous Symptoms, it may be called hard labour, or difficult Travel in Child-birth.

Causes. There are various Causes of hard Labour, sometimes tender Women by reason of pain, are very fearfull, and do endeavour to hinder pains, and consequently the Birth also.

Sometimes the Child being weak or dead, and not following the Water in Due-time, before the passage be too dry may be the Cause; especially if the Mother be weak, by reason of any Disease afflicting her, or by too much Evacuation of Bloud, or there be not sufficient Motion of the Womb, and Muscles of the Belly.

Sometimes the Child's head may be too big, or the passage too strait.

Also the Child may be turned in the Womb, and the Hands, Shoulders, Back, Belly,

Belly, or Buttocks, &c. may come forward to the Birth, and then the endeavour to bring forth will be painfull and difficult.

The signs of hard Labour are easily known; *Signs.* if the Child do stir, and there be strong pains, and no water appear, the Secundine is strong.

If pains be weak, and long before they return, and more in the Back than Belly, the Infant is weak.

If the Woman be little, and her Husband big and full shouldred, then there is a great Child, which will cause tough work.

1. Hard travel in Child-birth is very dan- *Progn.* gerous, for sometimes the Mother, sometimes the Child, and many times both do lose their Lives.

2. If the Woman be in Travel above four days, the Child can hardly be alive; and therefore must be drawn away before it be too late; for if it be neglected, it will cause Fevers, Faintings, Convulsions, Sleepiness, &c. which are the Forerunners of Death.

3. If sneezing cometh of its own accord, it is a good sign of deliverance.

First give this Cordial to strengthen both the Mother and Child.

Indications.

Take Waters of Baum, Vervain, Cinamon, of each two ounces; Syrup of Clove- *Cordial*
gilliflowers, Saffron, of each six drachms; *Julep.*
Spirit

Spirit of Saffron, *Confectio Alkermes*, of each one drachm ; mix it.

If the Child be situated on *Os pubis*, it must be removed, and all other unfit Postures must be rectified.

Then such things as hasten the Birth may be safely administred.

To encrease the Pains, and further the Womans Labour, I commend sneezing, and also the following Medicines.

Powder.

Take the Livers of Eels prepar'd with Cinamon-water, and dried, one drachm ; Powder of Borax, whitest Amber, Mirrh, Saffron, Dittany of Crete, round Birth-wort, of each half a drachm ; mix it, and give a Scruple of it at a time, in three spoonfulls of this Julep.

Julep.

Take the Waters of Vervain, Mugwort, of each two ounces ; Syrup of Saffron one ounce ; *Confectio Alkermes* one drachm ; Extract of Saffron six grains ; Oils of Cinamon, Amber, of each three drops ; mix it.

Some things have a peculiar property to help the Birth ; as the stone *Ætites*, Loadstone, Storax, the Eyes of a Hare, &c. held near the privities.

The time being come, the Woman must be put into a posture, (which every Midwife doth understand) and let her not labour too much, till strong pains come ; and then let

let her resolve on patience, and not be disorderly in the time of her Travel.

If she be faint, you may give her some of the formention'd Cordial Julep to comfort her.

Let your hands be anointed with some Anodine Ointment.

After the water is broke, if the Head cometh with the Face towards *Anus* receive it; if not endeavour to place it right: Then turn your Finger round about the Child's head gently, to make way for the Birth.

If the Child cometh any other way, you must endeavour to gain the Feet, and bring it away with the Face towards *Anus*, as before mention'd.

The Child being born, you must bring away the Secundine gently by degrees, after which put a Closure to the Woman to prevent Cold from entring the Womb.

Then prepare her for the bed, and give her some *Sperma Cæti*, or Irish-slate in a little burnt White-wine with Cinamon.

If the Woman doth flood much, or be troubled with after-pains, give her some of the following Cordial Opiate.

Take of small Cinamon-water, the waters Cordial
Opiate. of red Poppies, Baum, of each two ounces; Syrups of Clove-gilliflowers, white Poppies, of each one ounce; *Laudanum opiat.* three grains; Oil of Cinamon two drops; mix it, and give three spoonfulls of it often.

If

If the Child be born alive, after the Navel string is secured, give the Child ten grains of prepar'd Coral in a little Breast milk, or black Cherry-water dulcifi'd with Syrup of Peony, to which you may add a little Oil of sweet Almonds new drawn.

If the Child be troubled with gripes, you may give it a little Powder of Anise-seed in the Pap.

But if the Child be dead, and the Labour gone; or if the Child's head be very big, and the passage too strait; so that the Midwife cannot doe her Office; you must then speedily implore the help of the Man-midwife, as we are called.

Clyster. If a Woman in Child-bed hath a costive Body, give her a Suppository of Castile-soap, or Honey boiled; and after three or four days, you may administer, an emollient, carminative Clyster.

If a Woman (after hard Travel) cannot hold her Urine, bathe her secret Parts and Region of the Womb with this or the like Decoction.

Fomentation.

Take of Plantain, Comfry, Shepherds-purse, Tops of Brambles, Penny-royal, Rosemary, Sage, *Stæchas*, of each one handfull; lett them be cleansed, bruised and boiled in a Gallon of Smiths-water, till half of it be boiled away, then strain it, and bathe the parts affected very warm with woollen Stuphs.

After-

Afterward anoint the grieved parts with this Linament.

Take the Ointment *Comitiffæ*, Oil of Mace by expreffion, of each one ounce; Oils of Earth-worms, Foxes, Lillies, Goose-grease, of each half an ounce; mix it.

C H A P. XXI.

Of Nephritick pains, and of the Stone in the Reins and Bladder.

Diseases of the Reins are called in Greek *νεφρίτις, ἀνεφρός-Ren.*

In Latin they are called *morbis Renum*, which comprehends not onely any Ach in the Kidneys, but also the Stone and Gravel in the Reins.

Nephritick pains may be caused divers *cause*. ways.

1. First by a sharp salt matter, or a sharp and ferous *Lympha* in the Kidneys, which doth easily concrete into a Stone, especially when the Ferment of the Reins is much vi-tiated; which may be known by those cruel torturing Fits, that come by intervals.

S

2. Worms

2. Worms in the Kidneys, which for the most part arise from Bloud there corrupted, may be the cause of pain.

3. An Abscess or Tumour in the Kidneys, following an Inflammation, doth hinder the passage of Urine, and is always accompanied with great pain.

4. It may also be caused by glutinous Phlegm, obstructing the fleshy parts of the Kidneys, and hindring the separation of Urine; so that it is not strein'd into the Funnel of the Reins as usual, but is deprav'd and vitiated: Whence the natural descent off the Urine, through the Ureters into the urinal Bladder is also hindred.

Observation.

The same also may happen sometimes by a stone sticking in the Funnel, and stopping the entrance of the Ureters.

Although I think that Stones sticking in the Ureters themselves, cannot long hinder the passage of Urine; because it hath been found by experience, (in dissecting of dead Bodies) that Stones near the bigness of a Doves-egg; have been sticking in the Ureters; by the sides of which Stones, Urine descended freely, which was evident, because the Ureter was no where distended, unless where the Stone did stick: Neither was there any Urine contain'd in the Ureter, above the obstruction; besides when the Party was living, there was no stoppage of Urine.

Thotée

Those fits which come by intervals, are caused by a debility or vitiousness of the Ferment of the Kidneys, which generates crude, salt and sharp matter, which causeth those cruel Tortures; and should all the Gravel and Stone come away, the pain would not be the less, untill the Kidneys themselves be reduc'd to their right temper: For many in perfect health have voided much Gravel at a time without the least pain, and therefore it is evident that Gravel is onely the product, and not the producer or primitive cause of this pain.

The Symptoms of Nephritick pains are *Signs.* so much like that caused by the Stone, that they cannot be easily distinguished; for the signs of both are great pain of the Loins, loathing or vomiting, there being a great consent between the Reins and Stomach.

The Patient often pisseth bloody water, and when the Reins are ulcerated, the matter is often evacuated with the Urine.

Wherein the force of concreting or growing together of Stones (in divers parts of the Body) consists, is not enough known; I will freely declare what I conjecture in this obscure matter, whereby I may (according to my power) the more help others (that are ingenious) to search out this hidden truth. *Cause of the Stone.*

All the Stones that are generated in the
S 2 Body,

Body, may be dissolved in the four Spirit of Salt *Peter* or Niter; whence I conclude that the Coagulation of Stones cannot be expected from an acid Spirit as such, therefore from another somewhat contrary to it in part at least.

If any consider the several things, that promote the growing together of natural things, they will find that such force is in tart things; whence the Glutinousness, and Toughness of fluid things is wont to be produc'd; to which if earthy, and volatile salt parts be join'd, something will be produc'd not much unlike Stones.

I incline therefore to this opinion, that an earthy and salt matter, join'd to that which is glutinous, groweth together into Stones by help of a tart humour.

Also Gravel of all kinds (that is usually seen in the bottom of Urine) testifieth that the conglobated Glandules are all affected, by a frequent external Cold, or else by four things taken in, and when the Gravel is great it is then near to the Nature of Stones, yea sometimes groweth together into Stones, especially in cold phlegmatick Bodies, whence (for the most part) it giveth Stones their first rising, and daily cherisheth their production, and increaseth them; and the more especially where a glutinous, stone-making faculty doth concur in the Body.

Many

Many Histories mention, that Stones are *Histories.* produced from a stone-making Spirit, or Breath out of the Earth, which hath turned the Bodies of Men, Beasts and other things into Stone.

Riverius, (in his last edition) quoteth *Aventius Annal. Bavar. lib. 7. Anno 1343.* who saith, that above fifty Men, with many Cattle were turned into Stone.

Ortelius telleth the like story, that whole Herds in *Russia* have been turned into Stone.

And *Camerarius* reporteth, that in the Province of *Chilo* in *Armenia*, at the blast of a South-wind (which happeneth four times in a Year) whole Troops of Horse have been turned into Statues of Stone, standing in the same warlike Posture, in which they were marching.

Children are most inclinable to this Monster in Nature, because they have much moisture, and weak digestions, which generate Crudities.

Stones are generated in many parts of the Body, as the Gall, Reins, Bladder, &c.

I once opened a Woman that had sixty *History.* four Stones in her Gall.

I also dissected another whose Ureters were stony, and out of her Gall I took out a large Stone, and a small one (about the bigness of a Hazle-nut) out of the Neck of the Gall.

Progn.

1. These distempers are very dangerous, and bring many sad Symptoms to the afflicted Patient; as great pain, inflammations, exulcerations, long watchings, weakness, fevers, suppression of Urine, and Death it self.

2. Pain from acrid *Lympha*, &c. may be cured in those that are young, if the strength be not too much dejected, nor the Disease hereditary.

Cure.

That we may now address our selves to the Cure of these grievous Diseases; I would advise those who are not very skilfull in the Art of Physick, to forbear giving of any thing in these Distempers, without the Advice of an experienc'd Physician; for I believe many Stones have been bred in those Bodies (who before were free from it, and were onely troubled with Nephritick pains) by the frequent taking of ill Medicines; for many Remedies have been invented to dissolve the Stone; but experience teacheth that they are most of them inimical to the Reins and Bladder, and debilitate their Ferment.

The solvent of the Stone ought to be homogenous, and so singular, that it submit not to any digestions, or fermental Powers, through which it passeth in its way to the parts affected; for the Virtue of all common Remedies taken at the Mouth, are alter'd and transmuted in passing three digestions: For
acid

acid things, (from which much hath been hoped) as soon as they are past the Stomach, lose their acidity, and are converted into a saline Nature, so that the dissolving Power of the acid is wholly transmuted before it gets either to the Reins or Bladder.

Likewise those Medicines which are injected into the Bladder with a Syringe, ought to be agreeable to its Ferment, that it may not be painfull thereto; for if but a small quantity of any sharp Medicine be injected, it stirreth up an intolerable Strangury, it being wholly foreign to the Ferment of the part.

And seeing the Stone, and all other Distempers of the Reins and Bladder, are wont to be bred, and increased in length of time; the Remedies which you administer must be long us'd, before you may have experience of their effects.

I will here set down some choice Medicines, not onely to hinder the increase, but to dissolve small Stones in humane Bodies, if they be long enough us'd.

Amongst which we may deservedly attribute the first place to Spirit of Niter (seeing Stones of any kind are so easily and manifestly broken and dissolved by it) which may commodiously be mixt in any ordinary Drink, or Wine and Broths, &c. to a light acidity; whose excellent effects all may admire.

If the Patient have a costive Body, you may give the following Lenitive three or four times in a week.

*Purging
Bolus.*

Take of *Cassia* newly drawn one ounce; Venice Turpentine half an ounce; Crystal prepar'd, Salt of Tartar vitriolated, of each one drachm; Oil of Juniper, Spirit of salt Armoniack, of each four drops; Spirit of Niter twenty drops; mix it for two doses.

The following is also very effectual.

Take of *Cio-turpentine* half an ounce; Powder of Rhubarb one drachm; the Yelk of one egg, mix it for two doses; give it in the morning fasting, and drink four ounces of this Julep after it.

Julep.

Take the Decoction for Syrup of Marsh-mallows one quart; the waters of Horseradish, Pellitory of the Wall, Speedwell, Winter-cherries, Syrups of Marsh-mallows and the five opening Roots, of each two ounces; Crystal prepar'd, Salt *Prunella*, of each half an ounce; tincture of Salt of Tartar two drachms; Spirit of Niter twenty drops; *Laudanum* ten grains; mix it and give four or five spoonfulls of it often.

This Powder is also excellent.

Powder.

Take Salt of Tartar vitriolated two drachms; Powder of Crabs-eyes, Salts of Pigeons-dung, Broom, Beanstalks, Wormwood, of each half a drachm; mix it, and
give

give twenty grains of it every morning and evening in the foremention'd Julep.

If the Patient be plethorick, Phlebotomy may be used with good success.

If a Stone chance to stick in the Ureter, which causeth numbness, by its pressing upon the Muscle *Psoas*, and the Nerves,

In this Case, apply a Ventose on *os Ilium*, which may bring the Stone by degrees into the Bladder; afterward anoint the parts grieved with Rabbits fat.

If the Stone in the Bladder be very big, there is little hopes of dissolving of it, wherefore if the Patient (being in continual pain) be willing to submit to Lithotomy; I advise them to make choice of an experienc'd Artift; lest by Precipitancy the Operatour neglect to cleanse the Bladder, after the Extraction of the Stone; by the neglect of which, many have generated the Stone again, and have been forced to endure that dreadfull operation the second, and sometimes the third time, under which many have died, and others who recovered, have never held their Urine.

In other Nephritick pains, if the fleshy parts of the Kidneys be obstructed, they may be opened by Diureticks, that cut, attenuate, and make glutinous Phlegm fluid. For example,

Take

Decoction.

Take of Eringo-roots, the five opening Roots, of each one ounce; the Tops of Agrimony, the greater Celandine, of each two handfulls; the Berries of Juniper and Winter-cherries, of each two drachms; let them be cleansed, bruised and boiled in two quartss of Fountain-water, till half be consumed; then strain it, and add Syrups of Marsh-mallows, and the five opening Roots, of each two ounces; Tincture of Salt of Tartar two drachms; Spirit of Niter twenty drops; mix it, and give four spoonfulls of it every morning and evening.

They who like Juleps better, may use this or the like.

Julep.

Take the Waters of Fennel, Parsley, Pel-litory of the Wall, of each two ounces; the carminative Spirit of *Sylvius*, Syrups of Marsh-mallows, the five opening Roots, of each one ounce; Oil of Juniper, Spirit of Salt Armoniack, of each ten drops; Spirit of Niter twenty drops, *Laudanum opiat.* four grains; mix it, and give three spoonfulls every three or four hours.

The Patient may also drink freely of the mineral Diuretick-waters of *Tunbridge*, &c. which will conduce much to the Cure; especially if some old Diuretick-wine, and a little oily Volatile Salt (made of Diuretick, Vegetables) be mixed with the water.

When

When the glutinous Phlegm is prepar'd, and loosned, it may be educ'd with some convenient Phlegmagogue, either in the form of Pills or Potion, of which there are variety mention'd in page 3. and four, &c.

The fixt Sulphurs of Minerals and Metalls, exalted to their highest perfection, do (before all others) mildly temper all the humours; next to which oily Volatile Salts come, and Aromatics next to these: By the force of which (prudently us'd) not onely an effervescency of somewhat contrary Humours (most agreeable to Man's nature) is bred in the small Gut, and afterward in the Heart; but the preternatural growing together, and uniting of the more sharp humours (being first moderated by them) is again dissolv'd in the Bloud.

I speak these things by experience, and because it is of great moment in practice, I commend them to the truly Studious of Physick.

If the Urine be bloody, it testifieth the opening of some Vessel of Bloud in the Kidneys, Ureters, Bladder, or its Neck.

To heal and consolidate this harm the following is excellent.

Take the Waters of Parsley, Plantain, of *Cordial*
each two ounces; Cinamon-water, Syrups *Astringent.*
of Mirtles, Comfry, Marsh-mallows, of each
half an ounce; Powder of Dragons-bloud,
red

red Coral prepar'd, of each ten grains; *Laudanum opiat.* three grains; Spirit of Niter ten drops; mix it, and give three or four spoonfulls every two hours.

If there be an Ulcer in any of these parts, it may perhaps be more happily cur'd by the daily taking of Balsam of Sulphur (made with the Oil of Amber, Juniper, Anise-seed, or Turpentine) in any convenient Vehicle, than by any other Medicine hitherto known.

In all suppression of Urine, the following is very effectual.

Zulep.

Take the Waters of Chamomel, Golden-rod, Winter-cherries, of each four ounces; Syrups of Marsh-mallows, the five opening Roots, of each two ounces; Powder of Eggshells calcin'd one ounce; Tincture of Salt of Tartar two drachms; Spirit of Niter twenty drops; mix it, and give four spoonfulls every three hours.

CHAP. XXII.

C H A P. XXII.

Of Extraordinary Pissing, &c.

THIS Distemper is called in Greek Διαβήτης, ἀπὸ τοῦ διαβαίνειν i. e. *pertransire, quod urina ureteres, & urethram subito pertransit.*

It being a quick or plentiful pissing or making of water.

The cause is either external, or internal. *Cause.*

The external, or primary efficient Cause, is an immoderate drinking of stale Beer, Sider, or acid Wines, either French or Rhenish; by which an incurable *Diabetes* hath been oftentimes suddenly contracted.

The internal Cause of this Disease, is sharp, ferous humours abounding in the Bloud, by which not onely the whole Mass of it doth in time become too thin, but the nervous Juice is also thereby ill affected, and consequently the Reins inflam'd, by the continual flowing of the over acid ferous humours: Whence the attractive faculty of the Kidneys is increas'd, drawing the serosity of the Bloud more potently from the emulgent Vessels into the Funnel, and provoking the expulsive faculty, it is soon sent (through the Ureters) to the Bladder, from whence it is often evacuated by pissing.

The

Signs.

The signs are a continual pissing, so that much more moisture is voided, than is taken into the Body, by eating and drinking.

It is always accompanied with an extraordinary Thirst; the sick is also feverish, something like a Hectick.

Progn.

If it continue long, it will decay all the radical moisture of the Body, which will render it incurable, but if it be taken in the beginning, and the Patient be young, it may be easily cured.

Cure.

All things which have power to incrassate the thinness of the Bloud, and temper the over acidity of the humours, may be administered in this Distemper.

In the beginning of the Cure, after a stool hath been procured by an emollient Clyster, you may open a Vein in the Arm.

The next day a gentle Purge of Rhubarb may be administered; but if the Stomach be foul, and the sick can vomit easily, you may give an Antimonial Emetick with good success, because it will potently draw the sharp peccant humours from the emulgent Vessels and Reins, and evacuate some of them both by Vomit and Stool.

After the Operation of the Emetick, let the sick take two spoonfulls of this Cordial Opiate often, which will ease pain, and thicken the humours.

Take

Take the Waters of Barley, red Poppies, *Cordial* of each four ounces; Cinamon-water, Sy- *Opiate.* rups of Coral, and Comfry, Penidies, of each one ounce; Gums Arabick and Dragon, of each half an ounce; Powder of Dragons-bloud, red Coral prepar'd, of each one drachm; *Laudanum opiatum* six grains; let the Gums be dissolved in the distill'd waters, and strained, then mix all together according to Art.

You may prescribe this, or such a like Decoction, for the Patient's ordinary drink.

Take the Roots of *China*, *Sarsaparilla*, *Decoction.* Comfry, Plantain, red Sanders, of each two ounces; Liquorish, red Roses, Hemp-seed, of each one ounce; Raisins of the Sun stoned four ounces; let them be cleansed, bruised and boiled in a Gallon of Fountain-water, till half of it be boiled away, then strain it, and keep it for use.

Let the Diet be cooling, and thickning Broths and Jellies made of Knuckles of Veal, with the Roots of *China* and Comfry boiled in it, is excellent.

You may also make Panado's of the aforesaid Broth, with a few Crums of Whitebread, and the Yelk of an Egg.

Also milk (wherein the aforesaid Roots are boiled) will be very effectual.

C H A P. XXIII.

Of involuntary Pissing, commonly called pissing in Bed.

Pissing in Bed.

WHEN the Urine floweth involuntarily (which in Children is vulgarly called pissing in Bed) it may be called in Latin *urinæ incontinentia, pro impotentia sive imbecillitate retinendi.*

Causes.

The causes are either external, or internal.

The external Cause is a large Wound in the sphincter Muscle of the Bladder, which sometimes happens in Lithotomy; for by extracting a great Stone, the sphincter Muscle may be so much lacerated, that it ceaseth to be contracted, and the Orifice of the Bladder to be shut, wherefore the Urine distilleth of its own accord.

It may be caused internally by the Palsie, Apoplexy, Epilepsie, Syncope, &c. Sometimes Ebriety may be the Cause of the Resolution of the Nerves, which from the Loins are inserted into the Neck of the Bladder, and so render the sphincter Muscle incapable of Contraction; hence the Urine is involuntarily voided.

Progn.

In Children, this Distemper is curable, if taken in time; but if it happen to old Folks,

or

or if it be caused by a Wound in the sphincter Muscle of the Bladder, it is incurable.

That which is caused by the Palsie, Epilepsie, Syncope, &c. look for the Cure in their proper Chapters. Cure.

If it be caused by Ebriety, Sobriety may be commended to cure it, especially by the help of inward means to strengthen the parts affected.

Many things have been given to Children, that have been troubled with this Distemper; the most effectual are these.

Fried Mice, the inner Skins of Hens-gizzards, Cocks-weasands, *Pudenda suilla*, Stones of a Hare, Snails with the shells, all or any of these dried and poudred; also the Powder of Agrimony, Egg-shells, the burnt Ashes of an Hedge-hog, &c.

Any of these may be given in red Wine, or in Lime-water chalibeated, which may be dulcifi'd with Syrup of Comfry.

If Phlegm do abound in the Body, you may purge it with Phlegmagogues.

Also sweating with gentle Diaphoreticks, is very effectual.

Those already mention'd are proper, only consider the Age and Strength of the Patient.

C H A P. XXIV.

Of the Stoppage of Urine, and the Strangury.

THE Stoppage of Urine is called in Greek *ἰσχυρία*, *ab ἰσχω* comprimo, & *ἔργον* *Urina*.

'Tis called in Latin *Urinæ suppressio*.

The Strangury is called in Greek *στυγία*, & *στυγία* τὸ ἔργον ἐκκρίσιν, i. e. *urinæ difficultas*, vel *urinæ per guttas excretionem*. *Ex στυγίᾳ stilla*, & *ἔργον* *urina*.

These differ onely in degree, for when the Urine is totally obstructed, it may be called *Ischuria*, but when little is voided, and by drops, it may be called *Stranguria*.

Cause.

These distempers may be caused by viscus Phlegm, or coagulated Bloud in the Ureters, or *Urethra*, especially if a Stone, or some Gravel do also stick in the Passage, by which the obstruction will be more strengthened.

Sometimes it is caused by a schirrous Tumour, or other excrescency of Flesh, as a Carbuncle, &c. growing in the *Urethra*, or Chancel of Urine.

Sometimes it is caused by a preposterous holding in of the Urine, either, for shame or want

want of opportunity to evacuate it; so that the Bladder being extremely fill'd and distended, it hath not power to contract it self, hence the voiding of Urine is supprest.

It may also be caused by sharp humours, fretting and ulcerating the internal Superficies of the Bladder, by which it is continually stirred up to contract it self, and expell the Urine which is in it; so that the Bladder is empty, having little or no Urine in it, as I have known by experience.

This may be called a Bastard *Ischuria*, which may be also caused by some hurt in the attractive or expulsive faculty of the Reins.

If the aforesaid Causes be violent, it causeth an *Ischuria*, but if remiss, then a Strangury is stirred up, in which there is a perpetual Irritation to extrude the Urine, although slowly, and by drops, with exceeding pain and trouble.

Suppression of Urine is dangerous, and if *Progn.* it continue long, it is mortal; especially if the Patient's Breath stinck of Piss, or hath a Hiccough, or *Tenasmus*.

If the Cause be in the Neck of the Bladder or *Urethra* stopt, you may clear it, and draw away the Urine with a Catheter, as I have often done both from Men and Women with good success. *Cure.*

If the Cause be from the Reins or Ureters,

seek the Cure in the Chapter of Nephritick pains, &c.

Glutinous Phlegm, and coagulated Bloud, may be cut and attenuated with Aromatics boild in Water or Wine, and mixed with oily volatile Salts, Spirit of Niter, &c.

Stone-Horse dung is rich in Volatile Salt, wherefore if you mix the Juice of it with Rhenish-wine, and drink it often, you will admire its wonderfull effects, in curing not onely Stoppage of Urine, but most other obstructions.

Those Diureticks prescrib'd in page 266, 267. are also very effectual here.

Let the Belly and parts affected be anointed with Dears-suet, which will conduce much to give ease.

When the *Urethra* is obstructed by a Caruncle, &c. You must gently thrust in a hollow Instrument made of Lead or Silver, being first anointed with some consolidating Ointment.

You may leave the Instrument in, till the fear of a new Closing of the Passage be remov'd.

CHAP. XXV.

C H A P. XXV.

Of the Scalding or Sharpness of Urine.

THIS Distemper is called in Greek
Δυσουρία, à δὲς ἀγρε, ἔξ ἑρῶ Urina.

The causes are either external, or inter-*Causes.*
 nal.

The external Cause may be by the Application of *Cantharides*, or some other stronger Poison.

The internal Causes are sharp, salt and acid humours mixed with the Urine, which do corrode, and ulcerate the internal Surfaces of the Bladder, and sphincter Muscle.

Sometimes it is caused by sharp Stones, occasioning an Ulcer.

If the Bladder, or sphincter Muscle, or the *Progn.*
Urethra be ulcerated, it is hard to be cured; especially if the Patient be old, and the Distemper hath continu'd long, *& e contra.*

If the Bladder or urinal Passage be ulce- *Cure.*
 rated, it may be effectually cured by the Balsam of Sulphur, made with the Oil of Anise-seed, Amber, or Juniper, taken to two or three drops, twice or thrice daily in any convenient Vehicle, especially a vulnerary Decoction, which is most effectual.

The falt, acid, corroding humours may be corrected with Crabs-eyes, Perle, &c. and also all volatile oily Salts, taken often (in a small quantity) in any refrigerating Diuretick.

This Decoction is effectual.

Decoction.

Take the Roots of Mallows, Marsh-mallows, of each two ounces; Lettice, Endive, Purslain, Violets, of each one handfull; Jujubes, Sebestins, of each one ounce; Winter-cherries half an ounce; the four greater Cold-seeds, of each two drachms; red Roses, Water-lillies, of each half a handfull, let them be cleansed, bruised and boiled in two quarts of Fountain-water, till half of it be boiled away; then strain it, and add Syrups of red Poppies, Violets, of each two ounces; *Laudanum opiat.* ten grains; Oil of Vitriol ten drops; mix it, and give three spoonfulls every two hours.

An Emulsion of the Cold-seeds, or Chamomel-flowers boiled in Milk, is also very effectual.

If the Patient be costive, give emollient Clysters, or gentle Cholagogues, and Hydragogues, to evacuate the peccant humours.

Or else you may give a gentle Emetick for Revulsion.

If the pain be very great, you may inject an Emulsion (made of the Cold-seeds) into the
the

the urinal Passage, and anoint the Privities with *unguentum Populion*, &c.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of Venereal Affects.

THIS Scourge of transgressing Humanity, being as it were a Murrain, or common Destruction to venereous Persons, may be called in Latin *Lues venerea*, a *λύω* *solvo*, *vel quod Corpus omnino dissolvit, vel quasi luens usque ad nihil.* *Lues enim ista, pestis est* *Lues ve-*
species, vel qualiscunque contagio, quæ homines nerea.
inficit, debito supplicio scelus luere.

The first Knowledge of this pocky intestine Enemy (at least in the European parts of the World) was at the Siege of Naples, by the French; being brought thither (as some Authours affirm) by the Spaniards, that came with *Christopher Columbus* from the *West Indies*, and they like plaguy Persons that croud to infect others (contrary to their reserved temper) being inflam'd with a venereal Itching, and being also free of their flesh, they communicated (as a great rarity) this new found foul Distemper, to the Italian Women, which among others they had en-

grost to themselves from the Animal Indians in their American Tyrannical Conquests.

Many of those poor Creatures being deeply infected with the monstrous *Taws* (so called by the Indians) from whence this foul Distemper had its first original.

Hence it was first called the *Neapolitan*, and afterward the French disease; since which time, many of the precipitant youthfull *Europeans* (to their great Costs and Pain) have been punished with this impure venereal Affect.

This Itch in spite of Mortals will be catching, (where there is no fear of God to restrain) but the beginning natural momentary Pleasure, will often urge a smartfull end; so that this is the product of that sin of uncleanness, for which God hath pronounced, *Hebrews 13. 4. Whore-mongers and Adulterers God will judge.*

To describe this virulent contagious Disease, It is an universal sour taint of the spermatick parts; the seed in the spermatick Vessels being first corrupted with a cold indigested Putridness, is sometimes conveyed outward to the groins, infecting the obscene parts with a filthy eating Crusty scab.

But if the poisonous malign quality (gotten by impure Coition) be transfer'd to the Liver, which is the chief Subject of its more easie invasion, and its special residence; it must

must necessarily suffer egregious corruption, from whence the afflicting taint is dispersed into the whole habit of the Body, vitiating and corrupting the Nutrition of every part; by which the sick becomes wholly cachectick, and the filthy Pox (without speedy help) tyrannizing with many malign Symptoms, and afflicting both the body and mind, doth at length hurry the Patient into the pit of silence.

The cause is chiefly, the carnal use of *Cause.*
venereous Persons.

Also Children sucking of those Nurses that are infected, may receive the pollution from the poisonous malignity of the milk.

It may also be Hereditary, the seed of venereous Parents being polluted.

The most apparent signs, are a dulness of *Signs.*
the whole Body, white face, intolerable pain between the joints, especially in the Night, which hindreth sleep; sometimes Buboes in the Groins, &c. As is before mention'd, also Ulcers, and hard Pustules in many parts of the Body, as Head, Chin, &c. there is sometimes a relaxation of the *Uvula*, with Hoarseness and Corruption of the Palate, and Tumours of the adjacent Glandulous parts, there is also sometimes a Cariosity of the Skull, and other Bones. *Cum multis aliis.*

Progn.

1. It is difficult of Curation, if it hath continu'd long, or the Patient be consumptive; or if it be in a sucking Infant.

2. If it be Hereditary, 'tis incurable; but if the Patient be young, and newly infected, it may be easily cured.

Cure.

As for the Cure of this filthy Disease, first I advise the Patient to repent from the bottom of the Heart, for this great sin of uncleanness, &c.

Then make choice of an honest Physician.

The Cure is easiest effected in the Spring, or Fall of the Leaf; but if necessity urge, you may begin the Cure at any time.

First let the Body be prepared,

The following Apozeme may serve for Example in most constitutions.

Apozeme.

Take the five opening Roots, Liquorish, China, of each one ounce; Cinamon, Anise-seed, Senna, of each half an ounce; Agarick, Rhubarb, Cream of Tartar, of each two drachms; let them be cleansed, bruised and boiled in two quarts of Fountain-water, till half be consumed; then strain it, and add Syrup of Roses solutive four ounces; Salt of Tartar vitriolated two drachms; Spirit of Niter twenty drops; mix it, and give six spoonfulls every two hours.

If the Patient be Plethorick open a Vein; after which you may purge with these or the like Pills.

Take

Take of *Extractum Rudii*, one scruple; *Purging Mercur. dulcis*, Salt Armoniack, of each *Pills.* half a scruple; make it into four Pills, and take them in the Morning.

If you perceive by the Excrements, that the Patient's body be very foul, you may administer another Dose of Pills after two days intermission.

Then you may prepare the following Decoction, or one like it, to cause sweat, &c.

Take of *Guaiacum*, the Roots of *China*, *Sar-separilla*, of each one pound; Raisins of the Sun stoned, *Hermodactils*, *Polypodium*, Barks of *Guaiacum* and *Sassaphras*, of each four ounces; Juniper-berries, Anise-seed, Liquorish, Elicampane-roots, of each one ounce; let them be cleansed, bruised and infused in four Gallons of Rain-water, very hot for the space of a Night; then boil it gently till a third part be boiled away; strain it, and keep it for use. *Decoction.*

Let the sick take four spoonfulls of it, with ten grains of *Antimonium diaphoret.* every Morning and Evening, for four or five days following, and sweat after it in Bed, or in a Hot-house, or Bagnio, so long as can be well endured.

Then omitting a day or two, you may take another Dose of Pills; then sweat seven days more, after which purge as before; this doe for forty days, or till the Cure be perfected.

You

You may make a second Decoction of the Ingredients, for ordinary drink.

But if the sick have extreme Pains in the Night, ten grains of the following Pills may be given to bed-ward instead of the Decoction.

*Purging
Pills.*

Take Gum of *Guaiacum* two drachmss Antimony Diaphoretick, Bezoar-mineral Flower of Brimstone, *Diagredium*, *Mercurius dulcis*, humane Bones calcin'd, of each one drachm; Saffron, *Laudanum opiatum*, of each half a drachm; with Syrup of Saffron, make it into a Mass for Pills.

If there be a Defluxion of Rheum on the Lungs, you may give ten or twelve drops of Balsam of Sulphur, in a little of the Decoction every Morning, and the like quantity with half a drachm of Venice-treacle every Night; after which drink four ounces of the aforefaid Decoction, to promote a gentle sweat.

You may also make Fontinels in the Arm and Leg with good success.

But if the sick be of a hot Constitution and the Disease be inveterate, and stubborn the shortest and best way of Cure will be by salivation.

I do not approve of unction with mercurial Ointments, to raise the Flux, nor Turbith-mineral to be given inwardly; but the safest way is to administer *Mercurius dulcis*, but

let it be well prepared. Then you may give twenty grains of it with a little *Diascordium*, or Conserves of Roses: give it three or four Mornings successively, and drink a draught of the Diet-drink after it.

Also the second Decoction may be sometimes made use of for ordinary Drink, all the time of the Cure; and warm Posset-drink at other times, when desired.

When the Salivation is rais'd, let the sick have a piece of Gold between the teeth; and keep warm, and continue spitting till the Spittle become insipid, which is commonly in twenty days.

In the mean time, wash the Mouth with Plantain-water, and Syrup of Mulberries.

When you would abate the spitting, administer a Carminative Clyster, or a Clyster of Milk and Sugar every Night; and after its operation, give the following *Bolus*.

Take of *Diascordium* half a drachm; *Gasc* Bolus
coigns powder fifteen grains; Oil of Vitriol two drops; with Syrup of Poppies make it into a *Bolus*; give it at Night going to bed.

Pustules, Tumours and Ulcers of the Mouth, Tongue, Gums, or any other Place, will be all easily cured, when the Salivation is over.

You may dress the sores with the following Ointment, which is very effectual to cure all Pocky ulcers.

Take

Ointment. Take of Verdigreece, and common Salt, of each two ounces; powder them, and calcine them together; then mix it with eight ounces of *Unguentum Emulatum*.

When the filthy Enemy, or Neapolitan disease, is cast out by Salivation, you may sweat the Patient with the Decoction of *China*, &c. before mention'd, for sometimes, as is there directed.

Let the Diet be drying; rost Meat is better than boil'd.

Mutton, Chickens, Partridges, Rabbits, &c. are all good Food.

When strength doth begin to increase, Bread and Raisins may be eaten.

The greater Symptoms of this Disease are the Running of the Reins, Nodes, Caruncles, &c.

The Running of the Reins is called in Greek *γυνόρροια*, ex *γυν* semen, & *ῥέω* fluo, it being a Flux of natural Seed of Man or Woman unwittingly.

If the *Gonorrhœa* be virulent, it is a *prælude* to the Pox, and must be cur'd the same way; but if it be newly contracted, it may wholly and most safely be absolved by purgation.

The same Apozeme, and purging Pills before mention'd, are very proper, which must be continu'd till the Running of the Reins cease.

If the Patient be plethorick, let a Vein be opened.

To strengthen the spermatick parts, the following Balsamick Pills are effectual.

Take of Mummy, Bole Armenick, Gums *Balsamick Pills.* Dragon and Arabick, of each one ounce; Balsam of Sulphur two drachms; with Syrup of dried Roses, make it into a Mass for Pills, of which you may give half a drachm every Morning and Evening.

If there be Nodes, Caruncles or Ulcers in the urinary Passage,

The following Medicine may be daily injected.

Take the Water of the Spawn of Frogs *Injection.* four ounces; Honey of red Roses one ounce; white Troches of *Rhasis* one drachm; powder the Troches, and mix all together for an Injection.

After injection, put in an hollow Instrument made of Silver or Lead, being first anointed with some consolidating Ointment, as was directed in the Stoppage of Urine.

I do not approve of Astringents in the Beginning of the Cure of a *Gonorrhœa*, till the Patient be well purged, and the running begin to cease; because all Astringent means conduce to prolong the Distemper; but after the Cause is eradicated by purging, then they may be safely administred, if the Cure be not effected without it.

To

To prevent the Return of the Distemper, I advise the Patient to purge, and bleed every Spring and Fall.

Also keep a good Diet, be moderate in Exercise, and all other of the nonnatural things.

When thou art recovered, give God thee Praise; and have a care of committing thee like sin again, lest a worse thing befall thee; for it is a fearfull thing to fall into the Hands of the Living God. *Hebr. 10. 31.*

C H A P. XXVII.

Of the Rachites, or Rickets.

THIS Disease may be called in Greek *ῥαχίτις, vel νόσος τῆς ῥάχεως.*

It may be called in Latin *morbis spinalis*, it being a Disease of the Spine of the Back.

This spinal Disease is commonly called in English Rickets.

It is peculiar to Children, because they abound with a crude phlegmatick matter; for if they labour under a cold moist Distemper, there is presently a Penury and Paucity of the Animal Spirits; for the Brain, *cerebellum*, and *spinalis medulla*, being more compact

packt than is wont, is unfit for percolation, so that the most spirituous part of the Blood cannot pierce, or be strein'd through it: Hence the separation of the Animal Spirits is diminish'd.

For the aforesaid cold, moist, phlegmatick Humours, compacting the soft substance of the Brain, &c. it is thereby too much thickned and straitned in its porous passages.

The coldness of Air, Water, or Snow, vehemently affecting the Head, seems to confirm and prove this opinion; because when the Glandules of the Brain are affected and thickned by a stuffing of the Head with Coldness, then a more sparing production of the Animal Spirits useth to follow.

The essence of this Disease consists not onely in the Animal, and vital, but natural Constitution also, all the Functions being (in time) vitiated: For the *spinalis medulla* being primarily affected, all the Nerves which proceed from it (in its passage through the *spina Dorsi*) must of necessity be stupifi'd, and vitiated with a loose Feebleness; hence also all the nervous, membranous, and fibrous parts, through which those Nerves are carried, or inserted into, must consequently be vitiated with an inward weak Slipperiness; so that the very ends of the bones, as well as all the Faculties of the Body, bear a share in this Distemper.

U

When

When the Rickets is confirm'd in Infants, it seems to have some affinity with divers other Diseases, *viz.* a Chronical fever, an extenuation or leanness of the Body, and an *Hydrocephalus*, and many more, which are frequently complicated with this affect.

Observa-
tio.

And indeed not onely this, but most other Diseases (in process of time) do unite unto themselves other affects of a different kind, and therefore (for the most part) there is a complication of Chronical diseases before Death.

Causes

The Causes are either external, or internal.

The external may be any of the Non-naturals exceeding, either in excess or defect.

All things cold and moist do powerfully contribute to this Disease, especially an over cold and moist Air, which is most frequent in the Spring; the Air being then cloudy, thick, rainy, and full of vaporous Exhalations.

Hereupon the Children of those which inhabit near the Banks of the Sea, or great Rivers, Ponds or Marshes; (that are obnoxious to too much Rain, or are fed with a great Number of Springs) are more or less subject to this affect; for by the Continuance of such cold and moisture, the Bloud and Humours becomes too slippery, and therefore

therefore (in their Circulation) they must unavoidably cause a softness and looseness in all the parts.

Also experience testifieth that those Children which are born, and nursed near the Lead-mines in *Derby-shire*, &c. are generally affected more or less with a languidness of the Limbs.

For the Air being infected with noxious metalline Exhalations, which (for the most part) fight against the inherent Spirits of the parts, by a kind of venomous malignity; by which the spirituous pulsificative Force of the external parts is extinguished, and the strength of the Limbs, and whole Body much weakened and diminish'd.

Hither we may also refer fine soft Linen, applied actually cold and moist, (being not well dried by reason of the moistness of the weather) to the Spine of the Back, which is near the Original of the Nerves; the use thereof being too long continu'd, it cherisheth the Roots of this Disease in that tender Age.

Likewise Aliments of any kind, which are too moist and cold; or too thick, viscous and obstructive, do manifestly cherish this Distemper.

And I am induced to believe that Ebriety in English people, especially the Gentry; and eating of much Flesh; and not using frequent

labour, or exercise, may be a reason why this Disease is more common and natural to Children in *England*, than in other Regions, perhaps far exceeding it both in cold and moisture; as *Scotland*, *Holland*, &c. wherein this affect hath not been observ'd to be very common.

And therefore ebriety and eating of much Flesh, and defect of motion, and want of exercise doth most frequently, and most effectually concur to the production of it; because the inherent heat (in stupid and sluggish People) is not sufficient to resist and expell the superfluous moisture by a due transpiration: By which means the Circulation of the Bloud is become slow and lesned, and the production of the vital heat very feeble, and weak; so that nature is thereby forced to permit all the parts of the Body to be affected with a certain softness, looseness, and internal lubricity, more than is meet; which do sufficiently evince, that this is an efficacious cause, and a part of the essence of this Disease.

Hence we may easily infer that the Children of such Parents are more inclined to this distemper, than others who drink moderately, and eat less Flesh, and are more active and lively.

The internal Causes, are excrementitious Humours luxuriant in the Body, especially
Phlegm

Phlegm and ferous humours retained, and vitiated, being naturally cold and moist, and little spirituous, and affected with an internal slipperiness, wherefore upon a superfluous accumulation of these humours, the production of this affect succeedeth; because thereby a Colliquation of the parts, and a dissipation of the Inherent Spirits will be easily introduced; whereby all the parts will afterwards be rendred obnoxious to this cold and moist Distemper.

Many diseases preceding this affect, may be the cause of it; especially those which do extenuate, and much weaken the Body, as all Fevers, &c. And also all cold and moist, phlegmatick, and cachochymick Distempers, which will induce a stupour and dulness in the affected parts, and cause obstructions.

Also any great Pain, Inflammation, Tumour, Fracture, Luxation, or any other preternatural affect, that hinders the standing and playing of the Child, may be some cause of this Disease.

Presently after the beginning of the Di- *Signs.*
sease, a kind of slothfulness and numbness doth invade the Joints, and by little and little is increased, so that daily they are more and more averse from motion; besides in the beginning of this affect, there is usually observ'd, a certain laxity, softness, and flaccidity of all the first affected parts; af-

ter which followeth a great debility, languidness, and enervation of all the parts subservient to motion; so that (for the most part) they speak before they walk, which is vulgarly held to be a bad *Omen*; and if it vehemently increase, they do not onely totally lose the use of their Feet, but can scarce sit with an erected posture, and their weak and feeble Neck can hardly sustain the Burthen of the Head.

In the progress of the Disease, the Head and Face increaseth in bigness, but the fleshy parts below the Head, are daily more and more worn away.

There is also observ'd in this affect, certain swellings, and knotty excrescencies about some of the Joints; these are chiefly conspicuous in the Wrists, and somewhat less in the Ancles, and in the tops of the ribs; the Bones in the Armes and Legs, and sometimes the Thighs, and Shoulder-bones wax crooked; the Teeth come forth slowly, and with greater trouble than usual, and at length the Breast becomes narrow, and the *Abdomen* swollen, with an extension of the Hypochondriacal parts, which hindreth the free motion of the *Diaphragma* downwards; and by consequence doth somewhat interrupt the breathing, so that respiration becomes difficult, accompanied with coughing, the Pulse being also weak and small; and

and in the increase of the Disease, all these signs become more intense and evident, and many, and more grievous, are daily accumulated.

1. If this Disease be light and gentle, the *Progn.* Children affected therewith may be easily restored to health; sometimes by the sole benefit of Age, the vital heat being increased, and summoned forth to the external parts by the force of frequent exercises.

But if it so vehemently prevaileth, that the increase thereof cannot be prevented by the best internal means, and also most prudent applications, then there is imminent danger.

2. If it proceed from other Diseases, or be complicated with them, it will be the more difficult of curation; especially if the Bones of the Armes, and Legs be crooked, and there be great bending and tumour of the Joints of the Wrists, Ancles and Ribs.

But if the Symptoms decline, and the Child do easily endure agitation, and have often eruptions in the Skin, as Wheals, Pimples, or Itch, then there is great hopes of recovery.

3. If they be not cured in five years, they will grow deformed and crooked, and (for the most part) will become dwarfs, and live sickly, being either Cachectick, or Phthi-fical, till death do put a Period to their miserable Life.

Cure.

As for the Cure of this disease, both the Child and Nurse must keep a good diet which is easie of Concoction.

In the mean time you must not neglect the best Chyrurgical and Pharmaceutical means which will most conduce to the speedy recovery of the weakly Infant.

Universals being premised, the most effectual and approved Chyrurgical means in this affect, are Incision or Scarification of the Ears, and little Fountains or Issues; although many more may be used, *viz.* Frixions, Blisters, Ligatures, &c.

Incision or Scarification in the Ears, is to be performed on the Ridge, in the inside of the Ear above the hole; which must be stopt to hinder the Bloud passing into it.

This Operation must be often repeated, at least once or twice in a month; which hath proved succesfull when many other remedies have been ineffectual.

And here it may be noted, that Scarification being made in that place, must needs be of greater efficacy than if it were instituted in any other part of the Ear, or elsewhere.

I. First, Because the beginning of the fifth pair of Nerves is near that place, many of their Branches being distributed through the hollow of the Ear, and are thence conveyed into the *Spinalis medulla*, from whence it shooteth out little Branches which accompa-
ny

ny the Nerves of the marrow of the Back, to the ends of the very Legs and Feet; as many ingenious Anatomists have accurately observ'd.

Wherefore Scarification being there made, it is probable, that the matter (which commonly oppresseth the very beginning of that Nerve) is immediately evacuated, by which it is freed from obstruction; and having also gotten vigour (being excited by the pain and Inflammation) it driveth out all stupidity from within it; by which means the Branches of the Nerves from thence arising, which are communicated to the *Spinalis medulla*, and many other parts may be in some measure excited also.

2. Because by this means, there is a particular evacuation of the Head, which is wont to be oppressed with fullness in this affect.

Besides, the Bloud being somewhat lessned, the thickness and toughness thereof must thereby be corrected; and (by consequence) an equal distribution of it promoted to a more regular nourishment of the parts.

Issues in the Neck are also much approved in this disease, because they very much conduce to lessen the unusual magnitude of the Head, and to evacuate the superfluous watriness thereof, and repress the inordinate increase of the bones; also it manifestly dri-

drieth up the too much humidity of the spinal Marrow, exciteth heat, strengthens the Nerves, and expelleth the astonishment.

As for the Pharmaceutical or Physicall means, you must be sure to cleanse the first passages either by Clysters, Vomits or Lenitive purgations.

When the Belly is Costive and the excrements are hardned, or some flatuous humours afflict the Bowels with vehement pain,, then Clysters are chiefly required; and they may also be injected before any preparation,, Vomit or Lenitive purgation.

I need not prescribe any forms, because a little Milk and Sugar, with a few Anise-seeds boiled in it may serve.

Also an Emollient or Carminative Clyster (that is gentle) may be injectrd when there is occasion.

Emeticks if well prepared, and prudently administred are very efficacious, and will conduce much to the Cure.

And here I again commend Antimonial Vomits before all others.

1. First, because they not onely powerfully evacuate Crude or corrupt humours, and all manner of impurities contained in the Stomach by Vomit; but by an agitation and commotion, raised in all the parts, especially in the Bowels, they loosen the gross and viscous humours adhering to the Guts,

Guts, and convey them through their many involutions and labyrinths, by which they are expelled by Stool ; in which respect they are also profitable against torments of the Colick, and very conducive to unlock obstructions.

2. They most effectually irritate the expulsive faculty of all the parts of the Body, by which they compell forth the hidden and unappearing causes of diseases, especially of intermitting Fevers ; for by the very straining to Vomit, the Guts are also instigated to cast out by siege ; the Liver poureth away the Choler by the Biliar pore ; the juice of the *Pancreas* is voided into the small Guts ; the Spleen perhaps doth unburthen its excrement into the Stomach ; the Kidneys exern through the Ureters ; the Lungs by a strong Cough eject their Phlegm through the Wind-pipe ; the Head emptieth it self of salt waterish Rheums by the Palate, Nostrils and Eyes ; finally the whole Body (for the most part) is rendred more prone to a *Diaphoresis*, either by a manifest sweating, or else by insensible transpiration.

If any are afraid of Antimonial preparations (though most safe and potent) they may administer Salt of Vitriol, from five to ten grains, either in Posset-drink or any other convenient Vehicle.

Also the following may be safely administered.

Take

Vomit.

Take the clarified Juice of *Asarabacca* half a drachm; Syrup of the Juice of Sorrell two drachms; mix it, and give it in the morning fasting.

Observatio.

But here we may note, that vomiting is not to be provoked in very weak Children, unless they are naturally apt to Vomit, and the humours tend upwards of their own accord, and they easily indure it; and then they ought to be gentle and given in a small dose.

Those that are averse to vomiting may take lenitive Catharticks, which must be made pleasant and potable, that the young Patient may not loath the taking of them.

Manna, Syrup of Cichory with Rhubarb, Syrup of Violets and Syrup of Roses solutive are all good pleasant medicines; which you may mix according to your discretion, in any proper distill'd water, or in the decoction of *sennæ Gereonis*.

The following drink is of excellent virtue, and will conduce much to the Cure of this disease.

Infusion.

Take of Anise-seed, the Barks of Ash, Ivie, Tamarisk, Shavings of Harts-horn and Ivory, the Roots of Sassafras, Liquorish, *China*, *Sarsaparilla*, Butterbur, of each half an ounce; Mace one drachm; let them be cleansed, bruised and infused in two quarts of small Ale for two or three days; then strain it.

it out very strongly, and bottle it up for the Child's ordinary drink.

In the Cure you must endeavour to resist all symptoms, as Fluxes, Worms, Venereal affects, breeding Teeth with great pain, &c.

In any Flux, Gripes or urgent pain, you may give half a grain of *Laudanum opiat.* dissolved in any convenient Vehicle, so often as necessity urgeth.

If Worms or venereal affects be fear'd, you may sometimes administer this gentle purging *Bolus*.

Take of *Mercur. dulcis* six grains; *Diagredium*, Resin of Jallop, of each three grains; with Syrup of Roses solutive, make it into a *Bolus*; give it in the morning fasting. Purging
Bolus.

In your Broths and Panadoes, you may boil Harts-tongue, Ceterach, Liver-wort, Maiden-hair, Sage, the Bark of Tamarisk, red Sanders, Saffron, the Roots of *China*, and *Sarsaparilla*, &c. but let all things be made acceptable to the Palate.

All kinds of exercise unto which Children are accustomed, may be usefull in their time and season; as Rocking, Going, Swinging, Playing, &c.

Also Frixions are excellent, in which begin at the *Spina dorsæ*, and rub with a course warm linen Cloth, and also under the Short-ribs, and afterwards all other parts; let it be done gently, to cherish and incite the

the natural and vital heat, and attract the Nourishment to the affected parts.

External Medicines may be also applied, to strengthen the weak parts, as Emplasters, Ointments, &c.

These forms may serve for Example.

Linament

Take Ointments of the opening Juices, Tobacco, Marsh-mallows; Oils of Capers, Wormwood, Elder, Earth-worms, Bricks, Balsam of *Peru*, of each half an ounce; mix it.

With which let the weak parts be anointed with a warm hand, before a Fire.

Plaster.

Take the Plasters *Nervinum*, *De minio*, *ad Herniam*, of each one ounce; the Carminative Plaster of *Sylvius*, Balsam of *Peru*, of each two drachms; mix it, and spread it on thin Leather.

It may be applied to the Back, or any other weak part after anointing.

If the Lungs be affected, anoint the Breast with the following Ointment.

*Pectoral
Ointment.*

Take the pectoral Ointment two ounces; Oil of Mace by expression, Oil of Violets, of each half an ounce; mix it.

After which apply a Plaster.

They that desire more variety of Medicines, &c. let them peruse that excellent and learned tract of the Rachites written by the famous Doctours and Fellows of the College of Physicians at L O N D O N.

Ornari res ipsa negat, contenta doceri.

CHAP.

C H A P. XVIII.

Of the Gout, and Rheumatism.

THE Gout is called in Greek *ἀρθριτις* *Arthritis*, *ἀρθρον Artculus, quod Articulos infestet*; hence it is called in Latin *Articularis morbus*, it being a Disease of the Joints.

This is a general Name for all Gouts, or when all or most of the Joints are affected.

But when any particular Joint is infested with a Gouty distemper, it doth from thence take its denomination.

For if it invadeth the Jaw-bones, it may be called in Greek *σιαγωνάγος, ex σιαγών maxilla, & ἀγχιάνω sœvio, quod maxillarum usum impedit*. It being (for the most part) accompanied with a fierce and cruel Pain.

And so likewise if it invade any of the rest of the Joints.

If the *Vertebræ* of the Neck, &c. be affected, it may be termed *τραχηλάγος, ex τράχηλ & collum, vel cervix, &c.*

That which molests the Shoulders, may be fitly called *ὤμαγος, ex ὤμος humerus. &c.*

If it affects the Collar-bones, you may call it *κλεισάγος, ex κλείς clavis, vel clavicula, &c.*

That in the Elbow may be termed *πυχνάγος, ex πῦχος cubitus, &c.*

The

The Gout in the Hand is called *χειράγες*, ex *χείρ* manus, &c.

That in the Hip may be called in Greek *ἰσχάς*, ab *ἰσχίον* coxa, &c. quod ab *ἰχ* lumbus.

In Latin *Coxendicum dolor*, quod *coxendices* præcipue infestat.

If it be in the Knee *γονάγες*, ex *γόνυ* genu, &c.

If in the Foot *ποδάγες*, ex *πῦς* pes, & *ἀγερσίνα* *ſævio*, Quod *pedum usum impedit*, which may be added to every particular.

This and all other Gouts are most commonly accompanied with a fierce, cruel, tormenting pain; and thus much, if not too much of the Names of the Gout.

Causes.

The Causes are either external, or internal.

The external Causes are Gluttony, Drunkenness, immoderate Venery, Idleness, external Cold, and excess or defect of any of the non-naturals.

The internal Cause of all Arthritick pains, is the Juice of the *Pancreas* too acid and sharp, which raiseth a vitious Effervescency with Choler, &c. whereby a Fermental sharpness is increased; and when it is exorbitant, it is sent forth into the extreme parts, and meeting with that seedy Glue, which is between the Joints, doth not onely affect it with its fermental Acrimony, but is also the grand Cause of the virulent tormenting pain and inflammation in the part affected.

But

But seeing the pains are different, not only in divers People sick of this Distemper, but also the Pains of the Gout are divers in the same sick party, we must therefore, as well by reason as experience, search into the true Cause thereof.

Therefore in as much as the present molesting pains, are not always freed with the same medicines, no not in the same fit; much less all that are Gouty.

We may hence consider that divers humours, as Choler, Phlegm, &c. are diversly mixt and fermented with the Juice of the *Pancreas*, which is peccant in a sour Acrimony, being the primary Cause of all Gouts.

And here we may note, that this over acid Observatio. humour doth molest the sick (chiefly in the beginning of the fit) with a corroding pain; but after a while, when Choler (by its exceeding heat) hath gotten the Predominancy, it causeth a divers burning pain, according to the diversity of its faultiness.

But if viscous Phlegm be predominant, the pain is much dull'd, and the motion of the part hinder'd with a phlegmatick Tumour, rather than an acute pain; which ought to be accurately observ'd by every ingenious Artist.

When the Gouty humour hath invaded Signs. any joint, there is presently an unusual heat, and more exquisite sense in it, than formerly,

so that the least touch of any hard thing doth hurt the part; and the longer it continues, the more the Pain increaseth, with redness and swelling of the part affected, and most commonly attended with a Symptomatical Fever.

Progn.

1. The Gout is a Chronical disease, attended with violent Pain, but is seldom mortal, except in very weak Bodies that are much decay'd by Sickness, or old Age.

2. If it continue long, till the Joints are knotty, it is incurable, according to *Ovid*,

Tollere nodosam nescit medicina Podagram.

But if there be no Knots in the Joints, and the Patient is laborious, and the Body is (for the most part) soluble, and there be swelling of the Veins called *Varices*, then it may be happily cured.

3. If it becomes habitual to the sick, the morbifick *Idea* is implanted in the vital Spirit, and transfer'd through the seed, which makes it Hereditary.

Cure.

The Cure of the Gout will consist,

1. First in defending the afflicted Joints, as well against future Pain, as freeing them from that which doth molest at present.

2. In the universal amendment of the juice of the *Pancreas*.

3. In

3. In the correcting and evacuation of the vitious Choler.

4. In the altering and diminishing of Phlegm any way peccant.

To assuage the present Pain I commend the following Medicaments, which will conduce much to mitigate the sharpness of the acrimonious humours in all Gouty people, and ease the part affected.

When there is excessive heat, you may bathe the Gouty part with this Fomentation very hot, with wollen Stuphs, which must be often renewed.

Take the Waters of the Spawn of Frogs, *Fomentation.* Fumitory, Elder, of each one quart; Vinegar of Mary-golds one pint; *Opium*, Camphire, of each half an ounce; mix it according to Art.

But when the Pain is more corroding than burning, I commend the following to be used as the former.

Take of Treacle-water half a pint; the Waters of the Spawn of Frogs, Parsley, of each one quart; *Opium*, Camphire, of each half an ounce; mix it.

After Bathing with either of these; apply this Cataplasm.

Take Powders of the Roots of Marsh-mallows, Flax-seed, Barley-meal, of each four ounces; new Milk three pints; boil it to the Consistence of a *Pultes.* Pultes, and add Oils
X 2 of

of Flax-feed, Earthworms, the Ointment *Martiatum*, of each three ounces; Camphire half an ounce; mix it according to Art.

Where exceeding heat doth concur, and the Body abounds with sharp Choler; instead of sweet Milk, you may substitute Butter-milk.

Also a Pulstess made of the Crums of White-bread, new Goats or Cows milk and Saffron, with Oil of Lin-feed, and Earthworms, may be deservedly commended, to assuage any Pain.

If the sick be very phlegmatick, and impotency of motion doth afflict, more than pain; then Opiats may be omitted, and things more Aromatical may be used in all external Applications.

The following Pulstess, or one like it, may serve for Example.

*Cata-
plasm.*

Take the Powders of Orris-roots; the Flowers of Chamomel, and Elder, Cummin-seeds, Barley-meal, of each four ounces; the Tops of Wormwood, Mints, of each four handfulls; boil them in two quarts of water of the Spawn of Frogs, to the Consistence of a Pulstess; when it is almost cold, add Treacle-water, Oils of Chamomel, Earthworms, of each three ounces; mix it.

Also the Root of Briony, and Cuckow-pintle bruised, and made into a Pulstess with Cow-dung is excellent.

If

If you add Volatile Salts of Animals, or Vegetables to your Medicines, whether Fomentations, Cataplasms, or Ointments, they will be the more effectual.

You may prepare an excellent Volatile Salt of Earth-worms (of great Virtue) for the Gout, which may be resolved into Liquour by fermentation, and putrefaction.

If the Gouty Patient do abound with Phlegm, or the Juice of the *Pancreas* exceed in an acid Acrimony causing a corroding Pain; it may happily be mitigated and remov'd with Balsam of Sulphur made with Oil of Amber, with which let the grieved part be embrocated, and it will forthwith raise a very hot Effervescency, which will presently cease again, and remove the great Pain in a moment, even to admiration.

After the pain is over, you may apply one of the former Cataplasms, or some Anodyne Ointment, to comfort, and (by degrees) restore again the membranous parts.

The following Linament may serve for Example.

Take Oils of Earth-worms, Scurvigrafs, *Linament,* Saint John's-wort, of each one ounce; Chymical Oils of Rosemary, Rue, of each twenty drops; mix it.

Afterwards, you may apply a Plaster of *De minio cum sapona.*

In the mean time, inward means (to take away the Cause, and ease the pain) must not be neglected.

If the Patient have a plethorick Body, after a Stool hath been procured, by a Carminative Clyster, with *Electuar. Caryocostinum*, &c. Let a Vein be opened.

Bloud drawn from the *Vena poplitis*, or *sciatica* Vein, hath been succesfull in the *sciatica*.

But Leeches applied to the Hemorrhoidal veins, are effectual in all Gouts.

Two or three days after bleeding, you may administer the following Pills.

Purging
Pills.

Take of Pills *Hermodactils, fætida, ex duobus*, *Mercur. dulcis*, of each one scruple; mix it for two doses, and give them in the Morning fasting.

Or you may give half a drachm or two scruples of *pul. Arthriticus* in any convenient Vehicle.

But if the sick be inclining to vomit, administer an Antimonial Emetick.

You may purge and bleed so often as you see occasion.

Issues near the part affected, and also to raise Blisters upon the part, have been found by experience to be very effectual.

Also bathing and sweating in nitrous or sulphurous Baths, either natural or artificial, are much approv'd of.

That

That which is prescrib'd in the Chapter of the Belly-ach, is very effectual, which may be used, as is there directed.

I might fill a Volume with receipts against the Gout, but I shall onely commend the following water or spirit to be often taken inwardly in any fit Vehicle, the quantity of half a spoonfull at a time.

Take the Roots of *Orris*, *Angelica*, *Sassa-* *Water a-*
phras, of each two ounces; the Tops of ^{gainst the}
Ground-pine, *Penny-royal*, *Sage*, *Mother of* *Gout.*
Time; the Flowers of *Saint Johns-wort*,
Chamomel, *Prim-roses*, *Rosemary*, *Laven-*
der, of each three handfulls; the Berries of
Bays and *Juniper*, of each one ounce; Castor
two drachms; let them be all cleansed, brui-
fed and infused in six quarts of Spirit of
Earth-worms compound for the space of
twenty four hours, then distill it in an *Alem-*
bick according to Art.

The Rheumatism is called in Greek *ῥευμα-* *Rheuma-*
τισμός, *ex ῥέω fluo*; it being a distillation of ^{tismus.}
Rheumatick humours, not onely affecting
the Joints, but the adjacent parts, yea some-
times the whole Body; especially the Mus-
cles, Membranes, and *Periostium* of the
Thighs, Legs, and Hip-bones.

The humour is of a very malign Nature,
and soon causeth a Cariosity of the Bones, if
it be not prevented.

Cause. The Cause is the same with the Gout, but sharper.

Progn. 'Tis seldom mortal, but may be of long continuance, with great Pain, so that the Sick cannot endure to be touched.

Cure. In the Cure of this Distemper, Phlebotomy must be often repeated, and carminative Clysters often administred.

Foment the pained parts with stale Urine (made very hot) wherein Castle-sope is dissolved; after which anoint with this following.

Linament. Take Spirit of Salt Armoniack, Oils of *Guaiacum*, Bricks, of each two ounces; in which dissolve *Opium* one ounce; Spanish Sope four ounces; then add Oil of Roses six ounces, and make it a Linament according to Art.

If you would have it for a Plaster, you may add so much *Empl. de minio* to it, as will give it a sufficient Consistency.

The Medicines and Directions prescrib'd in the Cure of the Gout, are also proper here.

From these few observations, it will not be very difficult to select other choice Medicines out of the writings of Practitioners, to cure both the Gout and Rheumatism.

To prevent a Relapse, purge and bleed Spring and Fall, and keep a good Diet, and use moderation in all things.

I have now finisht this little Tract, or Manual of Physick, which I have written for the common good; not onely to serve young Beginners of the Art of Physick, but also for the sake of the sick themselves.

GOD grant that it may prove succesfull, and tend to the good of them both.

Now unto the onely wise God and our Saviour Jesus Christ with the Holy Ghost our Comforter; three Persons, and one God, be ascribed, and given all Laud, Honour, Glory and Dominion, from this time forth, and for evermore. Amen.

Postscript.

P O S T S C R I P T.

HAVING often prescrib'd the Carminative Spirit of *Sylvius*, and also his preservative water against the Plague, and his Carminative Plaster, &c. I will here give you the Receipts of them in English, that you may make them for your own use, as you see occasion.

The Carminative Spirit of Sylvius.

Take *Angelica*-root two drachms; the Roots of Masterwort, and Galangal, of each three drachms; the Tops of Rosemary, sweet Marjoram, Garden-rue, Centaury the less, Basil, of each one handfull; Bay-berries six drachms; the Seed of *Angelica*, Lovage, and Anise-feed, of each an ounce; Ginger, Nutmegs, Mace, of each half an ounce; Cinnamon one ounce and half; Cloves, Orange-peel, of each two drachms. All these things being grossly bruised, pour thereon Spirit of *Malaga* or Spanish-wine six pints.

Digest them two days in *Balneo Mariæ*, and draw off all the Spirit.

You may pour upon what remains the same quantity of Spirit of Wine; and after two days digestion, draw it off as before, which

which may be kept apart, as weaker than the former, but of much virtue to discuss Wind.

Aq. Prophylactica, or the Preservative-water against the Plague.

Take the Roots of *Angelica*, and Zedoary, of each one ounce; Roots of Butter-bur two ounces; the Leaves of Garden-rue four ounces; of Baum, Scabious, Marigold-flowers, of each two ounces; unripe Wall-nuts cut two pound; new Pome-citrons cut one pound; bruise them all together, then pour on twelve pints of the best Wine-vinegar, distill'd by it self to three fourth parts in Sand in a Glasse cucurbit, then digest them all Night, in the Morning distill the water with a slow Fire.

This gratefull Medicine may be mixt with ordinary drink, broth or any decoction or Cordial Julep, &c. to a gratefull acidity, for any that are sick, to take away thirst, and to promote a mild Sweat.

The Plaster of Sylvius discussing Wind.

Take gum *Galbanum*, *Bdellium* and *Amoniacum*, of each half an ounce; Male-frankincense, red Mirrh, of each two drachms; *Opium* of *Thebes* one drachm; dissolve them in Vinegar of Squills, and when they are
again

again thickned, add yellow Wax, Colophony, of each three drachms; natural Balsam, Oil of Bricks, of each one drachm; Oil off Earth-worms half a drachm; distill'd Oil off Caraway a scruple; Venice Turpentine what sufficeth to make it into a Plaster according to Art.

This egregious Plaster may be spread upon soft Leather, first form'd according to the shape and greatness of the Tumour to be dissolv'd.

The Cholagogue, Electuary, or Diaprunum of Sylvius.

Take the Pulp of Prunes sourish-sweet, ten ounces; Powder of Cream of Tartar, best Scammony, of each two ounces; Powder of Rhubarb ten drachms; Cinamon half an ounce; yellow Sanders two drachms; refin'd Sugar a pound; make it into an Electuary according to Art.

The Hydragogue Electuary of Sylvius.

Take of Juniper-berries boild in water exprest, and reduc'd to the Consistency of a Pulp; the Pulp of Tamarinds, of each four ounces; Powder of Jallop-root one ounce and half; *Diagredium* one ounce; sharp Cinamon, sweet Fennel-seeds, of each two drachms;

drachms; clarifi'd Sugar ten ounces; make it into an Electuary according to Art.

The Dose of either of these Electuaries, is from two drachms to half an ounce; they are gently effectual, and no ungratefull Medicines; they may be dissolv'd in any convenient distill'd water, as Parsley, Fennel, &c. or it may be taken by it self in the manner of a *Bolus*.

F I N I S.

ADVERTISEMENTS.

T *HIS* is to give notice to all Persons, chiefly country Physicians and Chyrurgeons, that all the Medicines prescrib'd in this Book, are faithfully prepared by the Authour hereof, and may be always had of him at reasonable rates, without Adulteration, or any other Deceits.

A *LL* sorts of Chymical preparations, are faithfully prepared without the least Sophistication or Adulteration, and to be sold at reasonable rates, by Christopher Pack Chymist, at the Globe and Furnaces in the Postern, by More-gate, where a Catalogue may be had Gratis.



An Interpretation of certain hard Words, which
you shall meet with unexplained in this Treatise.

A.

A Bdomen, *All that part of the Belly, which is between the Ribs and the Privy members, consisting of Skin, Fat and Muscles.*

Abcess, *an Impostume, or gathering of ill Humours to one part of the Body, and there drawn to a Head.*

Absterfive, *a cleansing Medicine.*

Acerbity, *Sourness.*

Acid, *eager, sour, or sharp.*

Acrimony, *Sharpness.*

An acute Disease *is a sharp Sickness, which doth quickly either dispatch or deliver the Sick.*

Ætites, *the Stone with Child, found in an Eagles-nest.*

Affected part, *the part grieved, or distempered.*

Alchemy, *the Art of melting or dissolving Metals, &c. and separating the pure from the impure.*

Alexiterion, *Alexipharmacum, a preservative Medicine against Poison, and Infection.*

Amputation, *the cutting off of a Member.*

Amulet, *any thing hanged about the Neck.*

Anatomy, *the Trunk of a dead Body, from whence all the Flesh, Sinews, &c. is cut off, and nothing remaining but the bare Bones.*

Anodyne, *appeasing Pain.*

Antidote, *a Preservative against Poison and Infection.*

Antimonial, *made of Antimony.*

Anus, *the Fundament.*

Apertion, *an Opening.*

Apophlegmatism, *a Medicine which chewed, draweth Phlegm and other Humours out of the Head, and voideth them at the Mouth.*

Apoplexy, *a general Palsie of the whole Body.*

Apozeme, *a thin Decoction of Herbs.*

Aromaticks, *Medicines made of Spice.*

Arteries, *hollow Vessels, wherein the vital Bloud, and Spirits are contained, which causeth the Pulse, as you may feel at the Wrists, &c.*

Arthritick pains, *the Gout or any other Pain of the Joints.*

Aspera Arteria, *the Wind-pipe.*

Astringent, *which hath Power to bind.*

An Interpretation of certain hard Words, &c.

B.

BAlneo, *Bath.*
 Balsamick, *Healing, of the Nature of Balsam.*
 Bechical, *easing the Cough.*
 Bile, *Choler.*
 Bolus, *a Lump, a Morsel.*
 Bronchia, *the Gristles of the Wind-pipe.*
 Bubo, *a Sore about the Groin.*

C.

CAchexy, *ill habit of Body.*
 Cacochymy, *ill Juice in the Body.*
 Calciate, *to burn into Ashes.*
 Capillary, *as small as a Hair.*
 Carbuncle, *a Plague-sore.*
 Cardiack, *Cordials.*
 Cariosity, *Rottenness.*
 Carminative, *that cleanseth the Body of Wind.*
 Cartilage, *a Gristle.*
 Caruncle, *a little Piece of Flesh.*
 Catagmatical, *Medicines to cure broken Bones.*
 Cataplasm, *a Pulvis.*
 Cataract, *a Disease of the Eyes.*
 Catarrh, *a Rheum.*
 Cathartick, *a purging Medicine.*
 Catheterick, *a Medicine to consume superfluous Flesh.*
 Cauterize, *to burn or sear.*
 Cephalicks, *Med. for the Head.*
 Cerebellum, *the little Brain.*
 Chalybeate, *red-hot Steel in any thing.*
 Chylus, *a white Juice coming of the Meat digested in the Stomach.*
 Cholagogue, *a Medicine that purgeth Choler.*

Chronical, *staying long.*
 Coliries, *Medicines for sore Eyes.*
 Colliquation, *a Dissolving.*
 Coriza, *a snottish Rheum.*
 Crisis, *Judgment.*
 Cuticula, *the Scarf-skin.*
 Cystick passage, *the Passage of the Choler from the Gall.*

D.

DEffluction, *a flowing down of Humours,*
 Delirium, *Dotage, Light-headed.*
 Desiccative, *a drying Medicine.*
 Diaphragma, *the Midriff.*
 Diaphoretick, *a sweating Cordial.*
 Diaphoresis, *Evaporation by sweat.*
 Diarrhea, *a Flux or Lask.*
 Diaetole, *Dilatation of the Heart, &c.*
 Diuretical, *causing Urine.*
 Dormative, *to cause sleep.*
 Ducts, *little Pipes for Water, &c.*
 Dura mater, *the strongest Skin encompassing the Brain.*
 Dysentery, *the Bloody-flux.*
 Disuria, *scalding of Urine.*

E.

Effervescency, *a working, a fermenting.*
 Elixir, *a Quintessence.*
 Embrocate, *to bedew.*
 Embryon, *an imperfect Child in the Womb, without shape.*
 Emetick, *a Vomit.*
 Emplastick, *a clammy Medicine.*
 Emulsion, *a Medicine like milk.*
 Epilepsie, *the Falling-sickness.*
 Epidemical, *Ill, the Plague.*

Epif-

An Interpretation of certain hard Words, &c.

Epispastick, a Medicine to raise Blisters.

Epithems, are certain Powders, put in little Bags, and wet in Wine, &c. and applied to the Regions of the Heart, Liver, &c.

Errhines, liquid Medicines to snuff up the Nose.

Escharotick, a potential Caution.

Exulcerate, to blister.

F.

Fascinate, to bewitch.

Fibers, small hairy strings.

Fistula, a hollow Ulcer with Callocity.

Filtration, a straining fire.

Fœtus, the young.

Fomentation, an asswaging Bath.

G.

Gargarism, a Liqueur to wash the Mouth.

Gargarise, to wash the Mouth.

Gangrene, an Inflammation tending to Mortification.

Gonorrhœa, the Running of the Reins.

H.

Hæmorrhage, an excessive or continual Flux of Blood.

Hæmorrhoids, the Piles, also the Veins in the Fundament.

Hepaticks, of or belonging to the Liver.

Hernius, broken Bellied.

Homogeneous, Homogeneal of one Kind.

Hydromel, Water and Honey.

Hydrocele, a waterish Rupture.

Hydrocephalos, a Dropsie in the Head.

Hydragogue, a Medicine to purge water.

Hydropical, that have the Dropsie.

Hypochondries, the fore-part of the Belly about the short Ribs.

Hypochondriacal, a windy Melancholy.

Hysterical, of or belonging to the Womb.

I.

Icterical, having the Jaundice.

Icchorous, waterish, mattery.

Jejunum, the hungry Gut.

Ileon, the third small Gut.

Iliack passion, a grievous Disease in the Gut Ileon.

Impostume, vide Abscess.

Inflammation, an hot angry Swelling.

Ingredients, that which goeth into the making of a thing.

Intercostal, between the Ribs.

Ischuria, Stoppage of Urine.

Jugular vein, in the Throat.

L.

Lacteal veins, milkie Veins.

Lethargy, a slothfull sleepy Disease of the Head.

Lientery, a Looseness, caused by undigestion.

Ligament, a bond or binding.

Linament, a kind of hard Ointment.

Lipothimy, fainting, sounding.

Lithotomy, cutting out of the Stone.

Y

Lixi-

An Interpretation of certain hard Words, &c.

Lixivial, *made of Lye.*
 Lixivium, *a Lye made of Ashes.*
 Lympha, *a waterish Humour.*

M.

Masticatory, *a Medicine to chew in the Mouth.*
 Medicinal, *of or belonging to Physick.*
 Membrane, *a thin Skin.*
 Menstruous, *a Woman having her Menses, or monthly Terms.*
 Mercurial, *made of Quick-silver.*
 Mesentery, *the thick fat Membrane, that fasteneth the Guts, &c.*
 Muscle, *an Instrument of voluntary motion in the Body.*

N.

Narcotical, *stupefactive, that hath power to stupefie, or make the Body insensible.*
 Neopolitan disease, *the Pox.*
 Nephritick, *of the Reins.*
 Nitrous, *made of Salt Petre.*

O.

Opiate, *made of Opium, to cause sleep, and give ease.*
 Ophthalmy, *Inflammation of the Eye.*
 Optrick nerve, *the Sinew which bringeth sight to the Eye.*

P.

Palate, *the hollow of the Mouth above.*
 Panchymagogen, *a Medicine which purgeth all Humours.*

Pancreas, *the Sweet-bread.*
 Paracentesis, *a tapping for the Dropsie, &c.*
 Pralitical, *that have the Dropsie.*
 Pectoral, *of or belonging to the Breast.*
 Pericardium, *the Membrane involving the Heart.*
 Periosteum, *a thin Skin enwrapping the Bones.*
 Peripneumony, *an Impostume of the Lungs.*
 Peritonæum, *the inner Rim of the Belly.*
 Pest, *the Plague.*
 Pharmacy, *Medicine.*
 Phlegmagogues, *Medicines that purgeth Phlegm.*
 Phlebotomy, *Bloud-letting.*
 Phrenetical, *that hath the Phrensie.*
 Pia mater *the tender Skin enwrapping the Brain.*
 Ptitious, *phlegmatick.*
 Pleuretical, *that hath the Pleurisie.*
 Plethorick, *fullness of Bloud.*
 Prohylactick, *a Preservative against the Plague, &c.*
 Ptisan, *Barley-water.*
 Pulsation, *a beating.*
 Pulverize, *pulverate, to beat into Powder.*
 Puncture, *a Pricking.*
 Purgative, *which hath virtue to purge.*
 Purulent, *full of matter.*
 Pustule, *a Wheal or Blister.*

Q.

Quartan ague, *that cometh every fourth Day.*

An Interpretation of certain hard Words, &c.

Quintan ague, *that cometh every fifth day, but seldom observ'd.*
 Quotidian, *that cometh every day.*

R.

Radical, *of or belonging to the Root.*
 Rarefaction, *a making thin of what was thick.*
 Rectum, *the Arse-gut.*
 Respiration, *fetching of breath.*
 Rupture, *a breaking.*

S.

Saline, *saltish.*
 Salivation, *spitting, or fluxing at the Mouth.*
 Sanguification, *the changing of the Nourishment into Bloud.*
 Saphena, *the Vein by the inner Ankle.*
 Scamoniats, *Medicines made of Scammony.*
 Scarifie, *to cut or lance.*
 Skeleton, *a dry Carcass, of Bones onely.*
 Sciatica, *the Hip-gout.*
 Scorbutick, *that have the Scurvy.*
 Scrofulæ, *the Kings-evil.*
 Secundine, *the After-birth.*
 Seminal, *of the Seed.*
 Serosity, *the wheyish, or waterish part of the Bloud.*
 Sphincter muscle, *the round compassing Muscle of the Fundament, &c. ordained to prevent untimely excretion.*
 Soluble, *Loose.*
 Solvent, *that hath Power to melt or dissolve.*
 Soporiferous, *causing sleep.*

Spasm, *the Cramp, or Convulsion.*
 Spermatical, *of or belonging to the Seed.*

Spina dorfi, *the Back-bone.*
 Spinalis medulla, *the Marrow of the Back.*

Spirituos, *full of Spirit.*
 Spissitude, *thickness.*

Sternutatory, *to cause sneezing.*
 Sternon, *the Breast-bone, where the Ribs meet.*

Sterillity, *Barrenness.*

Strangury, *a pissing by drops.*

Sudorifick, *that causeth Sweat.*

Suffocate, *to choak.*

Suffumigate, *to smoak underneath.*

Sulphur, *Brimstone.*

Superfetation, *a conceiving the second time.*

Suppuration, *a gathering to matter.*

Symptom, *any grief following a Disease, or sensibly joyned with it, as Head-ach with an Ague, &c.*

Systole, *contraction of the Heart, &c.*

T.

Tenasmus, *a Neediness to go to stool.*

Tenuity, *Smallness.*

Thoracick, *of or belonging to the Breast.*

Torsions, *gripings of the Guts.*

Trachea, or *Aspera arteria, the Wind-pipe.*

Transfer, *to carry from one place to another.*

Transmute, *to change.*

Transpiration, *sweaty Vapours coming forth of the Pores of the Skin.*

Tu-

An Interpretation of certain hard Words, &c.

Tubercles, *Pimples, Wheals.*
Tumour, *a swelling.*
Turgid, *after a swelling manner.*
Tympany, *the windy Dropsie.*

V.

VAperous, *full of Vopours.*
Varices, *swelling of the Veins in the Legs.*
Vegetables, *Roots or Plants.*
Vehicle, *any thing that carrieth, &c.*
Ventoses, *Cupping-glasses.*
Vertricle, *the Stomich, &c.*
Verminous, *full of Worms.*
Vertebra, *the Back-bone.*
Vertigo, *Giddiness.*
Vesicatory, *a Medicine to draw Blisters.*

Virulent, *deadly, poisonous.*
Viscous, *clammy like Bird-lime.*
Vitiate, *to corrupt.*
Volatile, *that flieth.*

U.

ULcerate, *to blister, to break out into Sores.*
Unguent, *an Ointment.*
Ureters, *the Vessels by which the Urine passeth from the Reins to the Bladder.*
Urethra, *the passage of Urine from the Bladder, through the Yard, &c.*
Uvula, *a fleshy substance, hanging down, like a Grape, from the Roof of the Mouth, towards the Root of the Tongue.*

ADVERTISEMENT.

A New Idea of the Practice of Physick; written by that famous *Franciscus De-le-boe Sylvius*; late chief Professour of Physick in the University of *Leiden*. The first Book; of the Diseases either constituting, producing, or following the Natural functions of Man not in Health. Wherein is contain'd, beside a new Method in General, a Vindication of the Spleen and Mother from fits attributed to them. As also a new Discovery of intermitting Fevers, the Yellow-jaundice, and other Diseases, never before discover'd. All clear'd by Anatomical experiments, and Chymical demonstrations; as also by their Cures. Faithfully translated by *Richard Gower*, formerly Student under the Authour. Printed for *Brabazon Aylmer*, at the three Pigeons against the *Royal Exchange* in *Cornhill*. in *Octavo*.

T H E E N D.





